

Release Notes for the DocBook XSL Stylesheets

Contents

1	Release Notes: 1.77.0	1
1.1	Gentext	1
1.2	Common	2
1.3	FO	3
1.4	HTML	7
1.5	Manpages	13
1.6	Epub	14
1.7	HTMLHelp	14
1.8	Eclipse	14
1.9	JavaHelp	14
1.10	Roundtrip	15
1.11	Slides	15
1.12	Website	15
1.13	Webhelp	15
1.14	Params	24
1.15	Highlighting	26
1.16	Profiling	27
1.17	Lib	27
1.18	Template	27
1.19	Extensions	28
1.20	XSL-Saxon	28
2	Release Notes: 1.77.0	28
2.1	Gentext	30
2.2	Common	31
2.3	FO	31
2.4	HTML	33
2.5	Epub	36
2.6	HTMLHelp	36
2.7	Eclipse	36
2.8	JavaHelp	36
2.9	Webhelp	36
2.10	Params	43
2.11	Highlighting	45
2.12	Profiling	45
2.13	Lib	45
2.14	Template	45
2.15	Extensions	46
2.16	XSL-Saxon	46

3	Release Notes: 1.76.1	46
3.1	FO	46
3.2	HTML	46
3.3	Params	46
4	Release Notes: 1.76.0	47
4.1	Gentext	47
4.2	Common	48
4.3	FO	49
4.4	HTML	50
4.5	Manpages	53
4.6	Epub	53
4.7	Eclipse	54
4.8	Params	55
4.9	XSL-Xalan	55
5	Release Notes: 1.75.2	55
5.1	Gentext	56
5.2	Common	56
5.3	FO	56
5.4	HTML	56
5.5	Manpages	57
5.6	Epub	57
5.7	Profiling	57
5.8	XSL-Saxon	57
5.9	XSL-Xalan	57
6	Release Notes: 1.75.1	58
6.1	FO	58
6.2	HTML	58
6.3	Epub	58
6.4	Params	58
7	Release Notes: 1.75.0	59
7.1	Gentext	60
7.2	Common	61
7.3	FO	62
7.4	HTML	66
7.5	Manpages	70
7.6	ePub	70

7.7	HTMLHelp	71
7.8	Params	71
7.9	Highlighting	73
7.10	XSL-Saxon	73
7.11	XSL-Xalan	73
8	Release Notes: 1.74.3	73
9	Release Notes: 1.74.2	73
10	Release Notes: 1.74.1	74
10.1	Gentext	74
10.2	FO	75
10.3	HTML	75
10.4	Manpages	76
10.5	ePub	76
10.6	Roundtrip	77
10.7	Params	77
10.8	Highlighting	78
11	Release Notes: 1.74.0	78
11.1	Gentext	79
11.2	Common	80
11.3	FO	82
11.4	HTML	85
11.5	Manpages	88
11.6	Epub	97
11.7	HTMLHelp	98
11.8	Eclipse	98
11.9	JavaHelp	99
11.10	Roundtrip	99
11.11	Slides	100
11.12	Website	100
11.13	Params	100
11.14	Profiling	103
11.15	Tools	104
11.16	Extensions	104
11.17	XSL-Saxon	105
11.18	XSL-Xalan	105
11.19	XSL-libxslt	105

12 Release Notes: 1.73.2	106
13 Release: 1.73.1	106
13.1 Gentext	106
13.2 FO	106
13.3 HTML	107
13.4 Manpages	107
13.5 HTMLHelp	108
13.6 Eclipse	108
13.7 JavaHelp	108
13.8 Roundtrip	108
13.9 Params	108
14 Release: 1.73.0	109
14.1 Gentext	109
14.2 Common	110
14.3 FO	111
14.4 HTML	112
14.5 Manpages	115
14.6 Eclipse	118
14.7 JavaHelp	118
14.8 Roundtrip	118
14.9 Params	118
14.10Highlighting	120
14.11Profiling	120
14.12Lib	121
14.13Tools	121
14.14XSL-Saxon	121
14.15XSL-Xalan	121
15 Release: 1.72.0	122
15.1 Common	123
15.2 FO	123
15.3 HTML	124
15.4 Manpages	124
15.5 Params	125
15.6 Template	126
15.7 Roundtrip	126

16 Release: 1.71.1	126
16.1 Common	127
16.2 FO	127
16.3 HTML	127
16.4 Highlighting	128
16.5 Manpages	128
16.6 Params	128
16.7 Profiling	128
17 Release: 1.71.0	128
17.1 Common	129
17.2 Extensions	129
17.3 FO	129
17.4 HTML	130
17.5 Highlighting	132
17.6 Manpages	132
17.7 Params	132
17.8 Tools	133
18 Release: 1.70.1	133
18.1 FO	133
18.2 HTML	134
18.3 HTMLHelp	134
18.4 Params	134
19 Release: 1.70.0	134
19.1 Common	135
19.2 Extensions	136
19.3 FO	136
19.4 HTML	140
19.5 Manpages	143
19.6 Params	146
19.7 Profiling	150
19.8 Tools	150
19.9 WordML	151
20 Release 1.69.1	151

21 Release 1.69.0	151
21.1 Common	152
21.2 FO	152
21.3 Help	153
21.4 HTML	153
21.5 man	154
22 Release 1.68.1	158
23 Release 1.68.0	159
24 Release 1.67.2	160
25 Release 1.67.1	160
26 Release 1.67.0	161
27 Release 1.66.1	162
28 Release 1.65.0	164
29 Release 1.64.1	164
30 Release 1.61.0	164
31 Release 1.60.1	165
32 Release 1.59.2	167
33 Release 1.59.1	167
34 Release 1.58.0	168
35 Release 1.57.0	168
36 Release 1.56.0	168
37 Older releases	169
38 About dot-zero releases	169

Abstract

This release-notes document is available in the following formats: [HTML](#), [PDF](#), [plain text](#); it provides a per-release list of enhancements and changes to the stylesheets' public APIs (user-configurable parameters) and excludes descriptions of most bug fixes. For a complete list of all changes (including all bug fixes) that have been made since the previous release, see the separate [NEWS](#) (plain text) or [NEWS.html](#) files. Also available: An online [hyperlinked change history](#) (warning: big file) of all changes made over the entire history of the codebase.

As with all DocBook Project [dot-zero](#) releases, this is an experimental release. It will be followed shortly by a stable release.

As with all DocBook Project “dot one plus” releases, this release aspires to be stable (in contrast to [dot-zero](#) releases, which are experimental).

This is a pre-release “snapshot” of the DocBook XSL Stylesheets. The change information in the first section of this file (for “Release Notes: 1.77.0”) is auto-generated from change descriptions stored in the project source-code repository.

That means the first section contains descriptions both of bug fixes and of feature changes. The remaining sections are manually edited changelog subsets that exclude bug-fix descriptions – that is, trimmed down to just those descriptions that document enhancements and changes to the public APIs (user-configurable parameters).

1 Release Notes: 1.77.0

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.76.1 release.

1.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the gentext code since the 1.76.1 release.

- stefanhinz: locale/de.xml
Translated German WebHelp strings
- David Cramer: locale/zh.xml; locale/en.xml; locale/fr.xml; locale/de.xml; locale/ja.xml
Webhelp: Update non-en gentext strings
- Robert Stayton: locale/en.xml
Add topic to title-numbered context.
- Robert Stayton: locale/en.xml
Add basic topic element templates.
- Mauritz Jeanson: locale/el.xml
Updated gentext for quotation marks. Fixes bug #3512440.
- Jirka Kosek: locale/cs.xml
Adding missing context for webhelp
- David Cramer: locale/en.xml
Fixing syntax of webhelp gentext entries
- David Cramer: locale/en.xml
Moving webhelp gentext strings into a context
- tom_schr: locale/zh.xml; locale/en.xml; locale/cs.xml; locale/fr.xml; locale/de.xml; local...
Moved language specific of WebHelp to gentext/locale/ as discussed with Stefan following the "minimal intrusive approach". :)
In the long run, maybe moving the text into a context, not sure.
- Robert Stayton: locale/zh.xml; locale/ca.xml; locale/nds.xml; locale/ru.xml; locale/ga.xml...
Add "or" string per Bug # 3322871, translated with Google translate.
- tom_schr: locale/en.xml; locale/de.xml
Fixed bug#3322871: simplelist: PI dbchoice and "or" does not exist
- Mauritz Jeanson: locale/ca.xml
Added patch #3363309.

- Jirka Kosek: `locale/ru.xml`

Aligned capitalization of first letters with English original

- dleibert: `locale/es.xml`

Fix <http://bugs.debian.org/605696>. Citing:

The English form of that section name is mandated to be NAME. `lexgrog` recognises NOMBRE in Spanish, which when I last looked was the common form used in that language. "NOMBRE DE REFERENCIA" is not recognised by `lexgrog`, and it's unnecessarily long anyway. I'd rather not add more forms to `lexgrog` unless absolutely necessary.

1.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the common code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

In "select.mediaobject.index" template, add selection of `videoobject` and `audioobject` since now supported in HTML5.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xml`; `titles.xml`; `entities.ent`; `targets.xml`; `subtitles.xml`; `gentext...`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

Fix handling of `mediatypes` for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Generate error message if `olink` data in `targetset` is in a namespace.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Back out changes because of problems with that update.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Add support for `olink` data in DocBook namespace.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

Add support for `generate.consistent.ids` parameter.

- Robert Stayton: `subtitles.xml`

Add verbose param to `subtitle.markup` templates to allow its error message to be ignored.

Add that param to `fop1.xml` application of `subtitle.markup` to avoid unnecessary error message in document information.

- Norman Walsh: `stripns.xml`

Make sure stripping doesn't delete `@{xml:}id` values!

- Jirka Kosek: `common.xml`

These should be params, otherwise it is not possible to customize them.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xml`

Add empty templates for `glossdiv`, `glosslist`, and `glossentry` in `mode="label.markup"`.

1.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

qualify caption template to `mediaobject/caption` so not confused with `table/caption`.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xml`

Add template to process `table/caption` element.

- Robert Stayton: `biblio.xml`

Remove template for obsolete `bookbiblio` element.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.templates.xml`

Fix format of topic title.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xml`; `component.xml`; `fop1.xml`; `titlepage.templates.xml`; `xep.xml`

Fix TOC processing for topic element.

- Robert Stayton: `component.xml`

Finish support for topic title element.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.templates.xml`

Fix typo.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xml`; `autotoc.xml`; `component.xml`; `xref.xml`; `titlepage.templates.x...`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Fix handling of `mediatypes` for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `pi.xml`

In `dbfo-need`, replace empty `list-item-label` with empty block to make output valid.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xml`

Add default style `att-sets` for `component.list.of.titles`, etc.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl

Restore component.list.of.tables etc. now that the titlepage.templates.xsl file has been updated by the Makefile.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl

Turn off component.list.of.tables because the build process is not updating the titlepage.templates.xsl file which has those templates.
Will restore when that is working.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl; component.xsl; titlepage.templates.xml

Add make.component.tocs to support lists of tables, etc. for article and other components. Added component.list.of.tables to titlepage.templates.xml to format the title.

- Robert Stayton: block.xsl

Change to new para.properties attribute-set.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent

Add new para.properties attribute-set for paragraphs.

- Robert Stayton: graphics.xsl

Fix bug 3487828 valign on inlinemediaobject in fo output has wrong property.

- Robert Stayton: inline.xsl

Add template mode 'simple.xlink.properties' to allow easy customization of formatting of links generated from elements other than xref, link, and olink using the xlink attributes.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent

Add table.caption.properties to format table captions.

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl

Add support for caption in a CALS table.

- Robert Stayton: htmltbl.xsl

Fix missing fop1.extensions for table-layout="fixed" property.

- Robert Stayton: math.xsl

Remove passivetex.extension test from graphic template.

- Robert Stayton: graphics.xsl; math.xsl

Refactored the 'process.image' template to create modular templates for each attribute so they can be individually customized. Also merged in support for embedded svg and mml content so they can have image attributes too.

- Jirka Kosek: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Added missing parameter definitions (though not sure why `base.dir` and `chunk.quietly` is needed in FO, maybe `olinks?`) ↔

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Check in new params for FO side regions in page masters.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xsl; titlepage.templates.xml`

Add support for `itermset` in info elements, using `titlepage` mechanism to ensure entries are placed inside `page-sequence`.

- Robert Stayton: `pagesetup.xsl`

Add support for side body margins and side static content regions. Fixes bug 3389931.

- Robert Stayton: `refentry.xsl`

Fix bug 3424546, no TOC for top level reference element in FO output.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

Fix bug where `toc.section.depth=0` causes a book toc to ignore chapters and appendixes.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Add support for `generate.consistent.ids` parameter.

- Dave Pawson: `param.xweb`

111011T08:05

- Robert Stayton: `biblio.xsl`

Support `author/orgname` in bibliography, fixing bug 3293062.

- Robert Stayton: `division.xsl`

Table title with `tocentry="0"` attribute is now omitted from the table of contents. Fixes bug 3279748.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

anchor template now checks to see if `fo:inline` or `fo:block` should be used. Fixes bug 3324138.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent; task.xsl`

Add attribute-set `task.properties` to `task` element to support customization.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl; param.xweb; param.ent`

Add new attribute-sets `calloutlist.properties` and `callout.properties` to better support customization of calloutlists, fixing bug 3160341.

- Robert Stayton: `pagesetup.xml`

Fix bug 3067027 set `page.number.format` to `'i'` for book and set titlepage.

- Jirka Kosek: `Makefile`

Titlepage mechanism is now namespace aware to support XHTML. Please note that when ↵
generating titlepage template stylesheets you have to pass FO or XHTML namespace ↵
inside `ns` parameter. For HTML parameter should be empty.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Allow selection by role for multiple `imageobject` elements
within an `imageobjectco`, which since Docbook 5 allows multiple `imageobjects`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Added template for `collabname`. Fixes bug #3414436.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.xml`

Added test for `@colwidth='*'` to suppress extension error message. See bug #3404224.

- David Cramer: `verbatim.xml`

Support the keep-together processing-instruction on `programlisting`, `screen`, `synopsis`, and ↵
`literallayout`. Tracker id #3396906.

- Robert Stayton: `division.xml`

Set template param `allow-anchors="1"` in division title to support footnotes in title.

- Robert Stayton: `fop1.xml`

Add verbose param to `subtitle.markup` templates to allow its
error message to be ignored.
Add that param to `fop1.xml` application of `subtitle.markup`
to avoid unnecessary error message in document information.

- Robert Stayton: `pagesetup.xml`

Pass the `pageclass`, `sequence`, and `gentext-key` to the template
named `header.footer.widths` to enable further customization
based on page master.

- Jirka Kosek: `xref.xml`

hyphenation of URL content must be disabled for link, not only for `ulink` because of DB5

- Jirka Kosek: `xref.xml`

URLs shouldn't be hyphenated as normal text

- dleider: `lists.xml`

Fix fo output for segmented lists with more than one `<segtitle>` (see r9001, reverted in ↵
r9006). The bug appears in table mode.

Bug report and patch from: <http://bugs.debian.org/620556>

- dleibert: lists.xml

Revert change 9001 – the patch is probably useless and not necessary.

- dleibert: lists.xml

Fix fo output for segmented lists with more than one <segtitle>.

Bug report and patch from: <http://bugs.debian.org/620556>

- Jirka Kosek: callout.xml

Added support for alternative circled numbers

- Mauritz Jeanson: xep.xml

Removed junk accidentally added to previous revision.

- Mauritz Jeanson: axf.xml; fop1.xml; xep.xml

Added support for author/orgname in document metadata. Closes bug #3132862.

- Robert Stayton: fop1.xml

Fix bug 3068509 where fop1 bookmarks converted diacritics to ascii. In FOP 1.0, that conversion is no longer needed.

- Robert Stayton: component.xml

Add template for article/colophon to avoid nested page-sequence.

1.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the html code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: graphics.xml

Make viewport layout table compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: division.xml

Add support for using <section> instead of <div> for html5.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xml

Add support for using info/title as well as title in target element.

- Robert Stayton: glossary.xml

Enable using <section> for glossary in html5 output.

- Robert Stayton: task.xml

Add support for info/title as well as title on task.

- Robert Stayton: chunk-common.xml

Make footnote rule compatible with html5.
Remove 'home' and 'up' links if html5.
Add call to placeholder template 'root.attributes' to enable adding attributes to <html> element.
Make sure user.footer|header.navigation templates get passed the params for next and prev.

- Robert Stayton: footnote.xml

Make footnote rule compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: titlepage.xml

Make revhistory layout table compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: autoidx.xml

Make compatible with html5 when using <dl> for layout.

- Robert Stayton: ebnf.xml

Add support for info/title as well as title.

- Robert Stayton: synop.xml

Make funprototype layout table compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: component.xml

Enable support for html5 features, including using <section> instead of <div> for certain elements, and setting heading level to <h1> for chapters. These features are not changed in the base html stylesheet for backwards compatibility.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.css.xml

Add style for footnote rule.

- Robert Stayton: qandaset.xml

Make qandaset layout table compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: block.xml

Convert block quote layout table to be html5 compatible.

- Robert Stayton: admon.xml

Modify admon table to be compatible with html5.

- Robert Stayton: block.xml

Modify revision history table to make it customizable for html5.

- Robert Stayton: biblio-iso690.xml

Add support for subtitle inside info.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Add call to new 'root.attributes' placeholder template to allow adding attributes to the <html> output element.

- David Cramer: param.xweb; param.ent

Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the ↔ parameter reference

- Robert Stayton: chunk-code.xsl

Take legalnotice out of find.chunks so it does not get Next and Prev.

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl

Small changes in support of HTML5 stylesheet.
Fix bug 3510185 for output list title when inside info.

- Robert Stayton: html.xsl

define internal variables div.element and table.border.off to enable easier support of HTML5 syntax.

- Robert Stayton: callout.xsl

Fix handling of id attributes on callouts.

- Robert Stayton: footnote.xsl

Fix missing id attribute on footnote mark.

- Robert Stayton: sections.xsl

Bug fix for generate.id.attributes.

- Robert Stayton: titlepage.xsl; autoidx.xsl

bug fix for generate.id.attributes creating duplicate ids.

- Robert Stayton: division.xsl; sections.xsl; block.xsl; footnote.xsl

Fix minor bugs in generate.id.attributes implementation.

- Robert Stayton: inline.xsl; titlepage.xsl; formal.xsl; division.xsl; toc.xsl; sections.xsl...

Finish implementation of generate.id.attributes for all elements using the template named id.attribute.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl

Fix TOC entries for topic element.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl; chunktoc.xsl; titlepage.xsl; chunk-code.xsl; changebars.xsl; ...

Add basic support for new <topic> element.

- Robert Stayton: graphics.xsl

Fix handling of mediatypes for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `callout.xsl`; `verbatim.xsl`

Restore `programlisting` to use `<pre>` instead of `<div>` and instead wrap `callout` `img` elements in `` to make valid HTML.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xsl`

Turn off `img` `longdesc` attribute because not supported by browsers.

- Robert Stayton: `footnote.xsl`

Move square brackets and `<sup>` inside `<a>` element for footnote marks to fix display problems in some browsers.

- Robert Stayton: `synop.xsl`

Fix bug 3481385 - link elements not preserved inside `funcsynopsis`.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

TOC entry for `refpurpose` should use `no.anchor.mode` to prevent duplicate ids when `indexterm` is inside `refpurpose`.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xsl`

Add `colgroup` around `col` elements in layout table.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Remove duplication of `mode="xref-to"` template for `qandadiv`.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

Add `colgroup` around bare `col` element in `variablelist` table to conform to `html5`.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.xsl`; `html.xsl`

Add support for `html.script` param to insert Javascript references.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add new params `html.script` and `html.script.type` to support Javascript references.

- Robert Stayton: `autoidx.xsl`

Fix bug that omitted duplicate `indexterms` in the same section but with different `zone` attributes, which should not be omitted.

- Robert Stayton: `html.xsl`; `table.xsl`; `block.xsl`

Fix bug 3441149 where `mode="class.value"` does not work for `para` or `entry` when the element does not have a `role` attribute.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Add new param `chunked.filename.prefix` to fix bug 3087359.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xml; chunktoc.xml; titlepage.xml; chunker.xml; chunk-code.xml...`

Add support for `chunked.filename.prefix` param.
Make sure `base.dir` value has a trailing slash in
the `chunk.base.dir` internal param used by the templates.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xml`

Pass empty `base.dir` for lot URLs to avoid problems using the `./` default
in `make-relative-filename`.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xml`

Fix bug when `$toc.section.depth=0` causes book toc to
ignore chapters and appendixes.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xml; chunk-code.xml; docbook.xml`

Fixed bug #3388088 where non-namespaced `chunkfast.xml`
not properly handling namespaced document.

- Robert Stayton: `formal.xml; htmltbl.xml`

Now handles caption in html markup table like title,
so `formal.object.title` is used with all its features, including
formatting and placement.
Added `htmlTable.with.caption` template to handle the wrapper, and
left `htmlTable` template unchanged.
Now caption template in `mode="htmlTable"` does nothing, because
caption handled by `formal.object.title` template.

- Robert Stayton: `html.xml`

Turn off generating the title attribute for block and hierarchical elements.
Should only be used for inline elements, usually using the `alt` element.
Also used for links to show the target title.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Add support for `generate.consistent.ids` parameter.

- Dave Pawson: `param.xweb`

111011T08:05

- Robert Stayton: `biblio.xml`

Support `author/orgname` in bibliography, fixing bug 3293062.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xml; chunker.xml`

Replace duplicate undocumented parameter `chunker.output.quiet`
with the original documented parameter `chunk.quietly`.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xml`

The `spacing="compact"` attribute on lists in HTML no longer outputs `compact="compact"` (or just `"compact"` in the case of Saxon 6), since that attribute is deprecated and improperly supported. Instead, the output uses a multiple class attribute such as `class="orderedlist compact"`. Use CSS to style such lists without margin above.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`; `chunk-common.xsl`

Table title with `tocentry="0"` attribute is now omitted from the table of contents. Fixes bug 3279748.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`

Add default `class="phrase"` when role attribute not used for class, fixing bug #3076510

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xsl`

Allow selection by role for multiple `imageobject` elements within an `imageobjectco`, which since Docbook 5 allows multiple `imageobjects`.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.css.xml`

Remove broken style for `autotoc.xsl`.

- Robert Stayton: `autoidx.xsl`

Fix bug: when `$index.links.to.section` is set to zero, the primary index entry duplicates links that should be only on secondary entries. Now the links are not duplicated.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Add `mode="no.anchor.mode"` to remaining `xref-to` templates that do not have it to avoid generating an invalid nested anchor in HTML output.

- Robert Stayton: `pi.xsl`

Improve doc descriptions of `dbhtml` filename and dir.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xsl`

Turn off fast chunking messages if `chunker.output.quiet` is set to 1.

- Robert Stayton: `autoidx.xsl`

Add `setindex` to context param in `mode="reference"` to better support `setindex`.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

Support `set` as child of `set` in `set.toc` template.

- dleider: `inline.xsl`

Fix Debian bug #611924 (<http://bugs.debian.org/611924>):

A quote element with an `xml:id` will lead to two anchors with the same name or ID which is not allowed. So don't call the anchor template. It is already called by `inline.charseq`.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-code.xml`

Fix call to `generate.css.files` so `.css` files can be generated when in chunking mode.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xml`

Change question and title templates to replace hard-coded `class="local-name()"` with `mode="class.attribute"` to support customization of class values.

- Robert Stayton: `chunktoc.xml`

Call `"generate.css"` in `process.root` so it can participate in the `'make.clean.html'` scheme.

- David Cramer: `glossary.xml`

Fixing typo (spurious ! at the end of line).

- Norman Walsh: `chunktoc.xml`

Separate book appendixes from article appendixes (so that they can be customized independently)

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xml`

Added condition to prevent "Failed to interpret image" messages (SVG is not supported by the graphic size extension).

- Robert Stayton: `formal.xml`

Fix bug 3116969 where `mode="class.value"` customization did not work for `table` or `informaltable`.

1.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Dave Pawson: `param.xweb`

111011T08:05

1.6 Epub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Replace `$base.dir` with `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash in place.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Match template for `"/` must have `priority="1"` since `chunk-code.xsl` is `xsl:included`, not `xsl:imported`.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Added support for `book/info` to support DocBook5.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Remove disallowed `priority` attribute from the `name="chunk"` template.

1.7 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the htmlhelp code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: htmlhelp-common.xsl

Change `$base.dir` to `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash in place.

1.8 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the eclipse code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: eclipse.xsl; eclipse3.xsl

Use `$chunk.base.dir` instead of `$base.dir` to ensure trailing slash is in place.

1.9 JavaHelp

The following changes have been made to the javahelp code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: javahelp.xsl

Change `$base.dir` to `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash is present.

- Mauritz Jeanson: javahelp.xsl

Replaced empty `header.navigation` and `footer.navigation` templates with parameter `suppress`. ↔
`navigation=1`,
which simplifies customization. See bug #3310904.

1.10 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the `roundtrip` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Dave Pawson: `param.xweb`

```
111011T08:05
```

1.11 Slides

The following changes have been made to the `slides` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Dave Pawson: `fo/param.xweb`; `html/param.xweb`

```
111011T08:05
```

1.12 Website

The following changes have been made to the `website` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Dave Pawson: `param.xweb`

```
111011T08:05
```

1.13 Webhelp

The following changes have been made to the `webhelp` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: `template/common/css/positioning.css`

```
Webhelp: Adding print-only css rules
```

- David Cramer: `template/common/main.js`

```
Webhelp: Arun's fix for bug where heading was partially hidden by header in some ↵  
situations.
```

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp-common.xsl`

```
Webhelp: turn off autolabeling by default
```

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

```
Webhelp: Import xhtml base stylesheets
```

- David Cramer: `docsrc/readme.xml`

```
Webhelp: Link to the DocBook reference docs from the webhelp readme
```

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp-common.xsl`

```
Webhelp: Use gentext value for noscript warning
```

- David Cramer: Makefile

Webhelp: Delete tempfile after DocBook xsl build

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the ↔
parameter reference

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl; xsl/webhelp-common.xsl

Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the ↔
parameter reference

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Webhelp: tweaking scrollldown offset for anchors

- David Cramer: docsrc/images; docsrc/images/sample.jpg; docsrc/readme.xml; template/content...

Webhelp: updating docs. Ant version, install instructions, handling of images.

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Patch from Arun Bharadwaj to display message if JavaScript is disabled

- David Cramer: template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js

Patch from Arun Bharadwaj to strip quotes from search query strings

- Robert Stayton: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Add basic support for new <topic> element.

- Jirka Kosek: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Put back old extensibility point.

Guys, please don't remove existing extensibility points like named templates, it will ↔
break existing customizations.

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Moving webhelp gentext strings into a context

- tom_schr: param.xweb

Fixed comment

- tom_schr: Makefile.param

Fixed indentation

- tom_schr: param.ent

Disabled branding and brandname entities for the time being

- tom_schr: Makefile.param

Added missing .param file (to be consistent with the other output formats)

- tom_schr: param.xweb

Enabled Id svn:keywords

- tom_schr: param.xweb

Included missing external entities

- tom_schr: param.xweb; param.ent

Prepared WebHelp reference documentation :)
Not clear about parameters brandname and branding: Should they be renamed to "webhelp.branding" and "webhelp.brandname"?
Currently, docsrc/reference.xml contains only a comment for the WebHelp ref doc to be non-intrusive.
Idea is to enable it when it is ready

- tom_schr: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Moved language specific of WebHelp to gentext/locale/ as discussed with Stefan following the "minimal intrusive approach". :)
In the long run, maybe moving the text into a context, not sure.

- stefanhinz: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added comment, mainly to test if I have write permissions to the repo. If yes, this will become my first commit here, so let me say HELLO everyone. -Stefan ↩

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Webhelp: Lower the minimum width of content pane

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js

If an user moved to another page by clicking on a toc link, and then clicked on #searchDiv ↩, search should be performed if the cookie textToSearch is not empty.

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css; template/common/images/search-icon.png;...

Webhelp: Small tweaks to icons, css

- David Cramer: Makefile

Webhelp: Perform xinclude if xsltproc is the processor

- David Cramer: Makefile

Webhelp: Hide remarks in readme output

- David Cramer: Makefile

Webhelp: Tweaking makefile

- David Cramer: build.properties; build.xml

Move paths to xercesImpl and xml-apis jars into build.properties

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Webhelp: Left align titles in nav header. Display for all but the topmost page

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`; `docsrc/xinclude-test.xml`

Webhelp: Cleanup related to `en_stemmer.js` changes

- David Cramer: `template/common/css/positioning.css`

Webhelp: Don't put borders around `qandaset` list

- David Cramer: `template/common/main.js`

Webhelp: Avoid unnecessary scroll ups when anchor is clicked on

- David Cramer: `build.properties`

Webhelp: Show footer nav by default

- David Cramer: `build.properties`; `build.xml`

Webhelp: Support setting `suppress.footer.navigation` from `build.properties`

- David Cramer: `build.properties`; `build.xml`

Webhelp: Support `admon.graphics` param in `build.properties`

- David Cramer: `docsrc/xinclude-test.xml`; `docsrc/readme.xml`

Webhelp: Adding `xinclude` example to the `demo/readme` doc

- David Cramer: `template/common/css/positioning.css`

Webhelp: Remove border around table used to format callout list

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/images/admon/tip.png`; `template/common/image...`

Webhelp: Support `admon.graphics` (still off by default)

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/css/positioning.css`

Webhelp: Turn on `navfooter` and fix related `css`

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Webhelp: Fix error about undeclared `doc.title` param

- David Cramer: `docsrc/readme.xml`

Webhelp: Adding some test search terms to the `readme`

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`

Handle exceptional cases listed in the Porter 2 stemming algo

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`

Webhelp: adding special case word 'say' to `en_js_stemmer`

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`

Webhelp: Refine stemming of terms that end in (only stem if there's a consonant before the `-y`)

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`; `template/content/search/nwSe...`

Webhelp: fixed bug where words like `key`, `day`, and `nucleus`, were not found due to differences in the way the client stemmer and indexer stemmed words

- David Cramer: `build.xml`

Webhelp: Support `xinclude` and two-pass profiling in `build.xml`

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Fix bad link to default topic.

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Addressed tracker item #3444549: Using `titleabbrev.markup` mode instead of `title.markup` mode for webhelp toc

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Addressed #3443430, adding `setindex` to Webhelp toc

- David Cramer: `template/common/main.js`

Fixed bug where content scrolls up when search or contents tab are clicked

- kasunbg: `docsrc/readme.xml`

Automatically limit the size of the search description to something 140 characters

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

removing outline in 'contents' and 'search' buttons that is visible when clicked. `tabindex` for SIDEBAR button.

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `build.xml`

Webhelp ant script changes - HTML transformation support for WebHelp - Uses Tagsoup for parsing the bad html.
`tagsoup-1.2.1.jar` is added to `trunk/xsl-webhelpindexer/lib/`

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

proper support for saxon xhtml transformation.

- kasunbg: `template/common/images/callouts/10.png`; `template/common/images/callouts/11.png`; `t...`

webhelp - adding callouts

- kasunbg: `template/common/main.js`; `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`

webhelp - some small rackspace additions, and cleaning up of `main.js`

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js; template/common/css/positioning.css`
webhelp - animations for show/hide Sidebar
 - kasunbg: `build.properties`
commenting about brand and brandname
 - kasunbg: `Makefile`
parameterized MAKE for webhelp
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css; build.properties; build.xml`
webhelp xsl customization - logo
 - kasunbg: `Makefile`
webhelp - fixing make clean
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css`
webhelp xsl cleanup. Added the missing chapter title.
 - kasunbg: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
fix no. 2 - Fix for missing "No results found for..." bug
 - kasunbg: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
remove some JS warninings
 - kasunbg: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
Fix for missing "No results found for..." bug
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
commented about the importance of the order of css contents. Order is important between ↔
the in-html-file css and the linked css files. Some css declarations in jquery-ui ↔
-1.8.2.custom.css are over-ridden. If that's a concern, just remove the additional css ↔
contents inside these default jquery css files. I thought of keeping them intact for ↔
easier maintenance.
 - Jirka Kosek: `xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css`
Minor cleanup, added extensibility hook, some styling moved into CSS for easier ↔
customization
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
Removing onclick that came from Oxygen's dita stuff
 - kasunbg: `docsrc/readme.xml`
webhelp - documenting about features
 - kasunbg: `template/common/css/positioning.css`
-

webhelp search text box

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css

adding header background image

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/images/header-bg.png

new header background image

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css

fix left navigation

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css

some css

- kasunbg: build.xml

Adding html.extension property

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css; build.properties; build.xml

webhelp - Adding enable.stemming, toc.file build properties

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Make the webhelp banner slightly larger.

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js; template/common/css/positioning.css

Adjust colors and positioning of header and search/toc tabs

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Only put doc title in header

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css; template/common/images/main_bg_fade.png

Adjusting default color of the header

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css

adjustments to header title. Now output in Opera looks good.

- kasunbg: template/common/images/sidebar.png; template/content/search/punctuation.props; te...

deleting svn:executable flag from webhelp files

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css; template/common/images/sear...

Customized the left navigation headers; Contents and Search.

Adding custom css for the current redmond ui of jquery-ui. These override jquery-ui's ←
default css customizations. These are supposed to take precedence.

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml

typo fix

- kasunbg: template/common/images/next-arrow.png; xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js; ...
UI improvements.
Moved search highlighter to search tab.
Added nice icons for navigation buttons etc.
Removed footer navigation
Corrected tree colorings
Overall, some css magic
- David Cramer: docsrc/readme.xml
Added listitem thinking SyncRO Soft for their contributions.
- kasunbg: build.xml
support for default classpath for Gentoo Linux
- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml
webhelp -some updates to the documentation about search
- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css
Fix for issue 'Keep "search" & "contents" titles always visible in webhelp - ID: 3403438'
- David Cramer: template/common/images/starsSmall.png
Changed icons used to show search weightings from stars to boxes so they won't look like user ratings ↔
- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js; template/common/images/starsSmall....
Merged Oxygen webhelp improvements (search weightings etc) into trunk: -r9031:9039
- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml
webhelp documentation - search indexing, faq
- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml
update webhelp documentation
- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl
Fixed bug where webhelp.default.topic was not being used if it was set
- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js
Localize string in nwSearchFnt.js file
- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl
Added tabindex attributes to make tab order in UI more logical in webhelp.
- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Fixed bug where anchors in pages landed beneath the banner.

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Added more comments to the `xsl/webhelp/xsl/webhelp.xsl` file. Removed some clutter.

- David Cramer: `template/common/main.js`

Fixed problem reported in IE 8. See tracker id # 373747.

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Addressed tracker #3247166 by removing hard-coded reference to `ch01.html`.

- kasunbg: `build.xml`

Changed the webhelp `build.xml` to reflect the changes to `xsl-webhelpindexer`. Added classpaths for `xercesImpl` and `xml-api` jars to the indexer. Paths added for *nix environments, need to look at how the current system behaves in Windows. Discussion: <http://lists.oasis-open.org/archives/docbook-apps/201011/msg00116.html>

- kasunbg: `template/common/images/loading.gif`; `template/common/jquery/treeview/jquery.treevi...`

webhelp: Removing some unnecessary JQuery JS files

- kasunbg: `template/common/main.js`

webhelp: Usability improvement - when click on a node in the TOC tree, the child nodes will auto populate now.

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Added google translated localizations for Japanese, German, French, and Chinese. The translations might not be pretty accurate. Better translations are appreciated.

- kasunbg: `docsrc/readme.xml`; `template/content/images`; `template/content/images/sample.jpg`

Added documentation for how to add images to WebHelp

- Jirka Kosek: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Added more customization hooks
Search code output only when search tab is active
Added cs localization

- Jirka Kosek: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Added parameter `webhelp.common.dir` for specifying location of common files (JS+CSS)
Added hooks for adding additional user defined tabs

1.14 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: webhelp.indexer.language.xml
Webhelp: Fixing list of supported languages
- David Cramer: webhelp.indexer.language.xml
Webhelp: Correct language code in docs for Chinese
- David Cramer: webhelp.indexer.language.xml; webhelp.default.topic.xml; base.dir.xml; webhe...
Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the ↔
parameter reference
- Mauritz Jeanson: htmlhelp.encoding.xml
Updated link (again).
- Mauritz Jeanson: admon.graphics.extension.xml
Added list of graphics formats.
- Mauritz Jeanson: htmlhelp.encoding.xml
Updated link.
- Mauritz Jeanson: passivetex.extensions.xml
Updated link.
- tom_schr: webhelp.indexer.language.xml; webhelp.default.topic.xml; webhelp.tree.cookie.id...
Fixed wrong xml:id's
- tom_schr: webhelp.indexer.language.xml; webhelp.default.topic.xml; webhelp.tree.cookie.id...
Prepared WebHelp reference documentation :)
Not clear about parameters brandname and branding: Should they renamed
to "webhelp.branding" and "webhelp.brandname"?
Currently, docsrc/reference.xml contains only a comment for the WebHelp
ref doc to be non-intrusive.
Idea is to enable it when it is ready
- Robert Stayton: bibliography.collection.xml
Fix well-formedness problem.
- Robert Stayton: normal para.spacing.xml; para.properties.xml
Clarify usage of para property attribute sets.
- Robert Stayton: normal para.spacing.xml
Clarify reuse of this attribute-set in other elements.

- Robert Stayton: bibliography.collection.xml; glossary.collection.xml

Clarify how relative paths are resolved.

- Robert Stayton: glossary.collection.xml

More explanation of relative paths in glossary.collection.

- Robert Stayton: glossary.collection.xml

Add info about relative paths.

- Robert Stayton: para.properties.xml

Special attribute-set for para only.

- Robert Stayton: table.caption.properties.xml

To format table captions.

- Robert Stayton: base.dir.xml

Add info about trailing slash added if it was omitted.

- Robert Stayton: html.script.type.xml

Fix typo in param name.

- Robert Stayton: html.script.type.xml; html.script.xml

Add support for specifying javascript references like css references.

- Jirka Kosek: body.margin.outer.xml; region.outer.extent.xml; side.region.precedence.xml; b...

Fixed well-formedness

- Robert Stayton: side.region.precedence.xml

Add comment about internal individual params for each side.

- Robert Stayton: body.margin.outer.xml; region.outer.extent.xml; region.inner.properties.xml...

Complete support for side regions.

- Robert Stayton: body.margin.outer.xml; region.outer.extent.xml; body.margin.inner.xml; reg...

Add support for side regions in FO output.

- Robert Stayton: chunked.filename.prefix.xml

New param chunked.filename.prefix to separate any such prefix from the base.dir param, which helps fix bug 3087359.

- Robert Stayton: generate.consistent.ids.xml

New param to support replacing generate-id() with xsl:number for more consistent id values.

- Dave Pawson: `linenumbering.everyNth.xml`

111011T08:12

- Dave Pawson: `hyphenate.xml`; `ulink.hyphenate.chars.xml`; `ulink.hyphenate.xml`

111011T07:57

- Robert Stayton: `task.properties.xml`

Allow task to be customized more easily.

- Robert Stayton: `calloutlist.properties.xml`; `callout.properties.xml`

Support better customization of callout lists.

- Robert Stayton: `ulink.hyphenate.xml`

Remove dated (2002) reference to supported ulink characters.
Add caveat about this applying only to empty ulink elements.

- Dave Pawson: `title.font.family.xml`

Updated for multiple fonts

- Dave Pawson: `monospace.font.family.xml`

Updated for multiple fonts

- Dave Pawson: `body.font.family.xml`

Updated for multiple fonts

- Jirka Kosek: `callout.unicode.start.character.xml`

Added support for alternative circled numbers

- Mauritz Jeanson: `refentry.title.properties.xml`; `qanda.title.properties.xml`; `section.title...`

Fixed bug #3157584 (trouble with font family selection).

- David Cramer: `example.properties.xml`

Made `example.properties` use `keep-together='auto'` like `table.properies` to avoid problems ↔
where `example/programlisting` takes more than one page

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphicsize.extension.xml`

Added info about supported image formats.

1.15 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `csharp-hl.xml`

Added LINQ keywords

- Jirka Kosek: `delphi-hl.xml`

Additional keywords from Yuri Zhilin

1.16 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: `profile-mode.xml`

When `profile.*` params only consist of space characters, then ignore them.

1.17 Lib

The following changes have been made to the `lib` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `lib.xweb`

Added two utility templates to make `lib.xml` work without reference to other modules since it is used that way with `profiling/xml2profile.xml`.

- Robert Stayton: `lib.xweb`

Fix `trim.common.uri.paths` to first resolve any `../` in the paths.

1.18 Template

The following changes have been made to the `template` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xml`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xml`

Fix bug in handling of attributes in `mode="copy"`

- Jirka Kosek: `titlepage.xml`

Handle namespaced elements without prefix in a special way in order to prevent copying ↔ excessive namespace declarations.

- Jirka Kosek: `titlepage.xml`

Preserve namespace of copied elements

- Jirka Kosek: `titlepage.xml`

Titlepage mechanism is now namespace aware to support XHTML. Please note that when ↔ generating titlepage template stylesheets you have to pass FO or XHTML namespace ↔ inside `ns` parameter. For HTML parameter should be empty.

1.19 Extensions

The following changes have been made to the `extensions` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- `kasunbg`: `Makefile`

```
webhelp - Adding enable.stemming, toc.file build properties
```

- `David Cramer`: `Makefile`

```
Attempt to convince Makefile that webhelpindexer is dirty
```

1.20 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-saxon` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- `Mauritz Jeanson`: `src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Verbatim.java`; `src/com/nwalsh/saxon/FormatGraphicCal...`

```
Added fixes to ensure that generated XHTML markup for callouts is in the proper namespace.
```

2 Release Notes: 1.77.0

The following list summarizes the major changes that have been made since the 1.76.1 release. It is followed by sections detailing changes to individual files from the SVN checkin logs, edited to remove housekeeping changes and bug fixes. See the `NEWS.xml` file for a complete unedited list of SVN changes.

- **Gentext**

webhelp

Many improvements to the generated text for webhelp output.

- **Common**

Support more media types

Expanded list of supported filename extensions for media to include video and audio, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

Topic element

Add basic support for new `topic` element, which is available in DocBook 5.1. Generally a topic element will be used with `assembly` and may be transformed to some other hierarchical element during processing, but it can also be formatted as a plain topic.

- **FO**

Add `para.properties` attribute-set

Add a `para.properties` attribute-set that applies only to `para` elements. That allows still using `normal.para.spacing` attribute-set for many block elements for uniform spacing, but allows separate formatting of `para` elements.

List of titles in article

Add support for List of Tables, List of Figures, etc. for articles and other component-level elements. Includes a new template for each in `autotoc.xsl`, new attribute-sets in `titlepage.xsl`, and new entries in the `titlepage.templates.xml` file to support customization.

Customizing links in FO

Add template mode `simple.xlink.properties` to allow easy customization of formatting of links generated from elements that use the `xlink` attributes. This extends link formatting beyond that of `xref`, `link`, and `olink` which use `xref.properties` attribute-set.

Table caption

The caption element in an HTML table is now handled like a title in a CALS table, using the `formal.object.title` template with all its features, including placement. Now `caption` template in `mode="htmlTable"` does nothing, because caption handled by `formal.object.title` template. Also adds support for `table caption` element in a CALS table, placing it after the table.

Graphics attribute handling

Refactored the big `process.image` template to use individual templates such as `image.width` for most attributes to allow easier customization of individual properties.

Side regions

Add support for side page regions in addition to header and footer regions. This feature lets you add running content to the side margins, and by default the content is rotated 90 degrees. Adds new templates named `running.side.content`, `region.inner` and `region.outer`; new template modes `region.inner.mode` and `region.outer.mode`; new parameters named `region.inner.extent`, `region.outer.extent`, `body.margin.inner`, `body.margin.outer`, and `side.region.precedence`; and new attribute-sets named `inner.region.content.properties`, `outer.region.content.properties`, `region.inner.properties`, and `region.outer.properties`.

Callout formatting

Add new attribute-sets for `calloutlist`.

Topic element

Add basic support for formatting a topic element, which is available in DocBook 5.1.

- HTML

HTML5

Add variables to the base HTML stylesheets that can be adjusted for the HTML5 stylesheets.

Insert Javascript reference

Add support for `html.script` param to insert reference to a Javascript file.

Namespace for titlepage mechanism.

Titlepage mechanism is now namespace aware to support XHTML.

Chunked filename prefix

New param named `chunked.filename.prefix` lets you add a filename prefix to each chunked file. This replaces the buggy practice of adding such a prefix to the `base.dir` param. Now the `base.dir` param will always have a trailing slash added if it is not present, so you no longer have to remember to add it to the param value.

Generate id attributes

The stylesheet param `generate.id.attributes` already existed but was incompletely implemented. Now when it is set to 1, only `id` attributes should be output, not `<a name>` named anchors.

Generate consistent id attributes

New `generate.consistent.ids` parameter which allows generating a more stable id values based on XPath rather than the `generate-id()` function, which may not produce consistent values between runs. Stable output ids allow you to make stable links to generated content from the outside.

Topic element

Add basic support for formatting a topic element, which is available in DocBook 5.1. Generally a topic element will be used with assembly and may be transformed to some other hierarchical element during processing, but it can also be formatted as a plain topic.

- Webhelp

Webhelp refactored

Webhelp templates refactored to better support customization.

Added documentation.

More and better documentation added.

Webhelp generated text

Many improvements to the generated text for webhelp output.

- XHTML5

New stylesheets to generate HTML5 output, in an XML serialization. These templates are a customization layer on top of the XHTML stylesheet files.

- EPUB3

New stylesheets to generate EPUB3 output. These templates are a customization layer on top of the xhtml5 stylesheet files.

- Assembly

New `assembly.xsl` stylesheet to convert a DocBook 5.1 assembly into a standard DocBook 5 document. Also includes a `topic-maker-chunk.xsl` stylesheet that can convert a DocBook 5 book or article document into an assembly with a collection of modular files, including converting some elements to topic files.

2.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- stefanhinz: `locale/de.xml`

Translated German WebHelp strings

- David Cramer: `locale/zh.xml`; `locale/en.xml`; `locale/fr.xml`; `locale/de.xml`; `locale/ja.xml`

Webhelp: Update non-en gentext strings

- Robert Stayton: `locale/en.xml`

Add topic to title-numbered context.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/en.xml`

Add basic topic element templates.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `locale/el.xml`

Updated gentext for quotation marks. Fixes bug #3512440.

- Jirka Kosek: `locale/cs.xml`

Adding missing context for webhelp

- David Cramer: `locale/en.xml`

Fixing syntax of webhelp gentext entries

- David Cramer: `locale/en.xml`

Moving webhelp gentext strings into a context

- tom_schr: `locale/zh.xml`; `locale/en.xml`; `locale/cs.xml`; `locale/fr.xml`; `locale/de.xml`; `local...`

Moved language specific of WebHelp to `gentext/locale/` as discussed with Stefan following the "minimal intrusive approach". :)
In the long run, maybe moving the text into a context, not sure.

- Jirka Kosek: `locale/ru.xml`

Aligned capitalization of first letters with English original

2.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

In "select.mediaobject.index" template, add selection of videoobject and audioobject since now supported in HTML5.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xml`; `titles.xml`; `entities.ent`; `targets.xml`; `subtitles.xml`; `gentext...`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

Fix handling of mediatypes for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Generate error message if olink data in targetset is in a namespace.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

Add support for `generate.consistent.ids` parameter.

- Robert Stayton: `subtitles.xml`

Add verbose param to subtitle.markup templates to allow its error message to be ignored.
Add that param to `fop1.xml` application of subtitle.markup to avoid unnecessary error message in document information.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xml`

Add empty templates for `glossdiv`, `glosslist`, and `glossentry` in `mode="label.markup"`.

2.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

qualify caption template to mediaobject/caption so not confused with table/caption.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xml`

Add template to process table/caption element.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xml`; `autotoc.xml`; `component.xml`; `xref.xml`; `titlepage.templates.x...`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Fix handling of mediatypes for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xsl`

Add default style att-sets for `component.list.of.titles`, etc.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`; `component.xsl`; `titlepage.templates.xml`

Add `make.component.tocs` to support lists of tables, etc. for article and other components. Added `component.list.of.tables` to `titlepage.templates.xml` to format the title.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add new `para.properties` attribute-set for paragraphs.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`

Add template mode `'simple.xlink.properties'` to allow easy customization of formatting of links generated from elements other than `xref`, `link`, and `olink` using the `xlink` attributes.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add `table.caption.properties` to format table captions.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xsl`

Add support for caption in a CALS table.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xsl`; `math.xsl`

Refactored the `'process.image'` template to create modular templates for each attribute so they can be individually customized. Also merged in support for embedded `svg` and `mml` content so they can have image attributes too.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Check in new params for FO side regions in page masters.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xsl`; `titlepage.templates.xml`

Add support for `itermset` in `info` elements, using `titlepage` mechanism to ensure entries are placed inside `page-sequence`.

- Robert Stayton: `pagesetup.xsl`

Add support for side body margins and side static content regions. Fixes bug 3389931.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`; `task.xsl`

Add attribute-set `task.properties` to `task` element to support customization.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`; `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add new attribute-sets `calloutlist.properties` and `callout.properties` to better support customization of calloutlists, fixing bug 3160341.

- Jirka Kosek: `Makefile`

Titlepage mechanism is now namespace aware to support XHTML. Please note that when ↔ generating titlepage template stylesheets you have to pass FO or XHTML namespace ↔ inside `ns` parameter. For HTML parameter should be empty.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Allow selection by role for multiple `imageobject` elements within an `imageobjectco`, which since Docbook 5 allows multiple `imageobjects`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Added template for `collabname`. Fixes bug #3414436.

- David Cramer: `verbatim.xml`

Support the `keep-together` processing-instruction on `programlisting`, `screen`, `synopsis`, and ↔ `literallayout`. Tracker id #3396906.

- Robert Stayton: `pagesetup.xml`

Pass the `pageclass`, `sequence`, and `gentext-key` to the template named `header.footer.widths` to enable further customization based on page master.

- Jirka Kosek: `xref.xml`

hyphenation of URL content must be disabled for `link`, not only for `ulink` because of DB5

- Jirka Kosek: `xref.xml`

URLs shouldn't be hyphenated as normal text

- Jirka Kosek: `callout.xml`

Added support for alternative circled numbers

- Mauritz Jeanson: `axf.xml`; `fop1.xml`; `xep.xml`

Added support for `author/orgname` in document metadata. Closes bug #3132862.

- Robert Stayton: `component.xml`

Add template for `article/colophon` to avoid nested `page-sequence`.

2.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xml`

Add support for using `info/title` as well as `title` in target element.

- Robert Stayton: `component.xml`

Enable support for html5 features, including using `<section>` instead of `<div>` for certain elements, and setting heading level to `<h1>` for chapters. These features are not changed in the base html stylesheet for backwards compatibility.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.css.xml`

Add style for footnote rule.

- Robert Stayton: `biblio-iso690.xml`

Add support for subtitle inside info.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.xml`

Add call to new `'root.attributes'` placeholder template to allow adding attributes to the `<html>` output element.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xml`; `titlepage.xml`; `formal.xml`; `division.xml`; `toc.xml`; `sections.xml`...

Finish implementation of `generate.id.attributes` for all elements using the template named `id.attribute`.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xml`; `chunktoc.xml`; `titlepage.xml`; `chunk-code.xml`; `changebars.xml`; ...

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Fix handling of mediatypes for video and audio files, mostly for HTML5 and EPUB3 outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `callout.xml`; `verbatim.xml`

Restore programlisting to use `<pre>` instead of `<div>` and instead wrap callout img elements in `` to make valid HTML.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xml`

Turn off `img longdesc` attribute because not supported by browsers.

- Robert Stayton: `footnote.xml`

Move square brackets and `<sup>` inside `<a>` element for footnote marks to fix display problems in some browsers.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add new params `html.script` and `html.script.type` to support Javascript references.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xml`; `chunktoc.xml`; `titlepage.xml`; `chunker.xml`; `chunk-code.xml`...

Add support for `chunked.filename.prefix` param.
Make sure `base.dir` value has a trailing slash in the `chunk.base.dir` internal param used by the templates.

- Robert Stayton: `formal.xml`; `htmltbl.xml`

Now handles caption in html markup table like title, so formal.object.title is used with all its features, including formatting and placement.
Added htmlTable.with.caption template to handle the wrapper, and left htmlTable template unchanged.
Now caption template in mode="htmlTable" does nothing, because caption handled by formal.object.title template.

- Robert Stayton: `html.xsl`

Turn off generating the title attribute for block and hierarchical elements. Should only be used for inline elements, usually using the alt element. Also used for links to show the target title.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

The spacing="compact" attribute on lists in HTML no longer outputs compact="compact" (or just "compact" in the case of Saxon 6), since that attribute is deprecated and improperly supported. Instead, the output uses a multiple class attribute such as class="orderedlist compact". Use CSS to style such lists without margin above.

- Robert Stayton: `graphics.xsl`

Allow selection by role for multiple imageobject elements within an imageobjectco, which since Docbook 5 allows multiple imageobjects.

- Robert Stayton: `pi.xsl`

Improve doc descriptions of dbhtml filename and dir.

- Robert Stayton: `autoidx.xsl`

Add setindex to context param in mode="reference" to better support setindex.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

Support set as child of set in set.toc template.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xsl`

Change question and title templates to replace hard-coded class="local-name()" with mode="class.attribute" to support customization of class values.

- Norman Walsh: `chunktoc.xsl`

Separate book appendixes from article appendixes (so that they can be customized independently)

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xsl`

Added condition to prevent "Failed to interpret image" messages (SVG is not supported by the graphic size extension).

2.5 Epub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl

Replace `$base.dir` with `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash in place.

2.6 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the htmlhelp code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: htmlhelp-common.xsl

Change `$base.dir` to `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash in place.

2.7 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the eclipse code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: eclipse.xsl; eclipse3.xsl

Use `$chunk.base.dir` instead of `$base.dir` to ensure trailing slash is in place.

2.8 JavaHelp

The following changes have been made to the javahelp code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: javahelp.xsl

Change `$base.dir` to `$chunk.base.dir` to ensure trailing slash is present.

- Mauritz Jeanson: javahelp.xsl

Replaced empty header.navigation and footer.navigation templates with parameter suppress. ↩
navigation=1,
which simplifies customization. See bug #3310904.

2.9 Webhelp

The following changes have been made to the webhelp code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Webhelp: Adding print-only css rules

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Webhelp: Arun's fix for bug where heading was partially hidden by header in some ↩
situations.

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp-common.xsl

Webhelp: turn off autolabeling by default

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Webhelp: Import xhtml base stylesheets

- David Cramer: `docsrc/readme.xml`

Webhelp: Link to the DocBook reference docs from the webhelp readme

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp-common.xsl`

Webhelp: Use gentext value for noscript warning

- David Cramer: `Makefile`

Webhelp: Delete tempfile after DocBook xsl build

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the `<webhelp>` parameter reference

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `xsl/webhelp-common.xsl`

Webhelp: moving parameters into the standard location so they will be part of the `<webhelp>` parameter reference

- David Cramer: `template/common/main.js`

Webhelp: tweaking scrolldown offset for anchors

- David Cramer: `docsrc/images`; `docsrc/images/sample.jpg`; `docsrc/readme.xml`; `template/content...`

Webhelp: updating docs. Ant version, install instructions, handling of images.

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Patch from Arun Bharadwaj to display message if JavaScript is disabled

- David Cramer: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`

Patch from Arun Bharadwaj to strip quotes from search query strings

- Robert Stayton: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Add basic support for new `<topic>` element.

- Jirka Kosek: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Put back old extensibility point.

Guys, please don't remove existing extensibility points like named templates, it will break existing customizations.

- David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`

Moving webhelp gentext strings into a context

- tom_schr: param.ent

Disabled branding and brandname entities for the time being

- tom_schr: param.xweb; param.ent

Prepared WebHelp reference documentation :)
Not clear about parameters brandname and branding: Should they renamed
to "webhelp.branding" and "webhelp.brandname"?
Currently, docsrc/reference.xml contains only a comment for the WebHelp
ref doc to be non-intrusive.
Idea is to enable it when it is ready

- tom_schr: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Moved language specific of WebHelp to gentext/locale/ as discussed with
Stefan following the "minimal intrusive approach". :)
In the long run, maybe moving the text into a context, not sure.

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Webhelp: Lower the minimum width of content pane

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js

If an user moved to another page by clicking on a toc link, and then clicked on #searchDiv ←
,
search should be performed if the cookie textToSearch is not empty.

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Webhelp: Left align titles in nav header. Display for all but the topmost page

- David Cramer: template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js; docsrc/xinclude-test.xml

Webhelp: Cleanup related to en_stemmer.js changes

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Webhelp: Don't put borders around qandaset list

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Webhelp: Avoid unnecessary scroll ups when anchor is clicked on

- David Cramer: build.properties

Webhelp: Show footer nav by default

- David Cramer: build.properties; build.xml

Webhelp: Support setting suppress.footer.navigation from build.properties

- David Cramer: build.properties; build.xml

Webhelp: Support admon.graphics param in build.properties

- David Cramer: docsrc/xinclude-test.xml; docsrc/readme.xml

Webhelp: Adding xinclude example to the demo/readme doc

- David Cramer: `template/common/css/positioning.css`
Webhelp: Remove border around table used to format callout list
 - David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/images/admon/tip.png`; `template/common/image...`
Webhelp: Support admon graphics (still off by default)
 - David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/css/positioning.css`
Webhelp: Turn on navfooter and fix related css
 - David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
Webhelp: Fix error about undeclared `doc.title` param
 - David Cramer: `docsrc/readme.xml`
Webhelp: Adding some test search terms to the readme
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`
Handle exceptional cases listed in the Porter 2 stemming algo
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`
Webhelp: adding special case word 'say' to en js stemmer
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`
Webhelp: Refine stemming of terms that end in (only stem if there's a consonant before the `-y`)
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/stemmers/en_stemmer.js`; `template/content/search/nwSe...`
Webhelp: fixed bug where words like key, day, and nucleus, were not found due to differences in the way the client stemmer and indexer stemmed words
 - David Cramer: `build.xml`
Webhelp: Support `xinclude` and two-pass profiling in `build.xml`
 - David Cramer: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
Fix bad link to default topic.
 - kasunbg: `docsrc/readme.xml`
Automatically limit the size of the search description to something 140 characters
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
removing outline in 'contents' and 'search' buttons that is visible when clicked. `tabindex` for `SIDEBAR` button.
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `build.xml`
Webhelp ant script changes - HTML transformation support for WebHelp - Uses Tagsoup for parsing the bad html.
`tagsoup-1.2.1.jar` is added to `trunk/xsl-webhelpindexer/lib/`
-

- kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
proper support for saxon xhtml transformation.
 - kasunbg: `template/common/images/callouts/10.png`; `template/common/images/callouts/11.png`; t...
webhelp - adding callouts
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/main.js`; `template/common/css/positioning.css`
webhelp - animations for show/hide Sidebar
 - kasunbg: `build.properties`
commenting about brand and brandname
 - kasunbg: `Makefile`
parameterized MAKE for webhelp
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/css/positioning.css`; `build.properties`; `build.xml`
webhelp xsl customization - logo
 - kasunbg: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
remove some JS warninings
 - kasunbg: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
Fix for missing "No results found for..." bug
 - kasunbg: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`
commented about the importance of the order of css contents. Order is important between ↔
the in-html-file css and the linked css files. Some css declarations in jquery-ui ↔
-1.8.2.custom.css are over-ridden. If that's a concern, just remove the additional css ↔
contents inside these default jquery css files. I thought of keeping them intact for ↔
easier maintenance.
 - Jirka Kosek: `xsl/webhelp.xsl`; `template/common/css/positioning.css`
Minor cleanup, added extensibility hook, some styling moved into CSS for easier ↔
customization
 - David Cramer: `template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js`
Removing onclick that came from Oxygen's dita stuff
 - kasunbg: `docsrc/readme.xml`
webhelp - documenting about features
 - kasunbg: `template/common/css/positioning.css`
webhelp search text box
 - kasunbg: `template/common/css/positioning.css`
-

adding header background image

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/images/header-bg.png

new header background image

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css

fix left navigation

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css

some css

- kasunbg: build.xml

Adding html.extension property

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css; build.properties; build.xml

webhelp - Adding enable.stemming, toc.file build properties

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css

Make the webhelp banner slightly larger.

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js; template/common/css/positioning.css

Adjust colors and positioning of header and search/toc tabs

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Only put doc title in header

- David Cramer: template/common/css/positioning.css; template/common/images/main_bg_fade.png

Adjusting default color of the header

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css

adjustments to header title. Now output in Opera looks good.

- kasunbg: template/common/images/sidebar.png; template/content/search/punctuation.props; te...

deleting svn:executable flag from webhelp files

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/css/positioning.css; template/common/images/sear...

Customized the left navigation headers; Contents and Search.

Adding custom css for the current redmond ui of jquery-ui. These override jquery-ui's ←
default css customizations. These are supposed to take precedence.

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml

typo fix

- kasunbg: template/common/images/next-arrow.png; xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js; ...

UI improvements.
Moved search highlighter to search tab.
Added nice icons for navigation buttons etc.
Removed footer navigation
Corrected tree colorings
Overall, some css magic

- David Cramer: docsrc/readme.xml

Added listitem thinking SyncRO Soft for their contributions.

- kasunbg: build.xml

support for default classpath for Gentoo Linux

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml

webhelp - some updates to the documentation about search

- kasunbg: template/common/css/positioning.css

Fix for issue 'Keep "search" & "contents" titles always visible in webhelp - ID: 3403438'

- David Cramer: template/common/images/starsSmall.png

Changed icons used to show search weightings from stars to boxes so they won't look like user ratings ↔

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/common/main.js; template/common/images/starsSmall...

Merged Oxygen webhelp improvements (search weightings etc) into trunk: -r9031:9039

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml

webhelp documentation - search indexing, faq

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml

update webhelp documentation

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Fixed bug where webhelp.default.topic was not being used if it was set

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl; template/content/search/nwSearchFnt.js

Localize string in nwSearchFnt.js file

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added tabindex attributes to make tab order in UI more logical in webhelp.

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Fixed bug where anchors in pages landed beneath the banner.

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added more comments to the xsl/webhelp/xsl/webhelp.xsl file. Removed some clutter.

- David Cramer: template/common/main.js

Fixed problem reported in IE 8. See tracker id # 373747.

- David Cramer: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Addressed tracker #3247166 by removing hard-coded reference to ch01.html.

- kasunbg: build.xml

Changed the webhelp build.xml to reflect the changes to xsl-webhelpindexer.
Added classpaths for xercesImpl and xml-api jars to the indexer. Paths added for *nix ↩
environments, need to look at how the current system behaves in Windows. Discussion: ↩
<http://lists.oasis-open.org/archives/docbook-apps/201011/msg00116.html>

- kasunbg: template/common/images/loading.gif; template/common/jquery/treeview/jquery.treevi...
webhelp: Removing some unnecessary JQuery JS files

- kasunbg: template/common/main.js

webhelp: Usability improvement - when click on a node in the TOC tree, the child nodes ↩
will auto populate now.

- kasunbg: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added google translated localizations for Japanese, German, French, and Chinese. The ↩
translations might not be pretty accurate.
Better translations are appreciated.

- kasunbg: docsrc/readme.xml; template/content/images; template/content/images/sample.jpg

Added documentation for how to add images to WebHelp

- Jirka Kosek: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added more customization hooks
Search code output only when search tab is active
Added cs localization

- Jirka Kosek: xsl/webhelp.xsl

Added parameter webhelp.common.dir for specifying location of common files (JS+CSS)
Added hooks for adding additional user defined tabs

2.10 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: webhelp.indexer.language.xml

Webhelp: Fixing list of supported languages

- David Cramer: webhelp.indexer.language.xml

Webhelp: Correct language code in docs for Chinese

- Mauritz Jeanson: admon.graphics.extension.xml

Added list of graphics formats.

- Mauritz Jeanson: passivetex.extensions.xml

Updated link.

- tom_schr: webhelp.indexer.language.xml; webhelp.default.topic.xml; webhelp.tree.cookie.id...

Prepared WebHelp reference documentation :)
Not clear about parameters brandname and branding: Should they renamed
to "webhelp.branding" and "webhelp.brandname"?
Currently, docsrc/reference.xml contains only a comment for the WebHelp
ref doc to be non-intrusive.
Idea is to enable it when it is ready

- Robert Stayton: glossary.collection.xml

Add info about relative paths.

- Robert Stayton: para.properties.xml

Special attribute-set for para only.

- Robert Stayton: table.caption.properties.xml

To format table captions.

- Robert Stayton: html.script.type.xml; html.script.xml

Add support for specifying javascript references like css references.

- Robert Stayton: body.margin.outer.xml; region.outer.extent.xml; body.margin.inner.xml; reg...

Add support for side regions in FO output.

- Robert Stayton: chunked.filename.prefix.xml

New param chunked.filename.prefix to separate any such prefix from
the base.dir param, which helps fix bug 3087359.

- Robert Stayton: generate.consistent.ids.xml

New param to support replacing generate-id() with xsl:number
for more consistent id values.

- Robert Stayton: task.properties.xml

Allow task to be customized more easily.

- Robert Stayton: calloutlist.properties.xml; callout.properties.xml

Support better customization of callout lists.

- Jirka Kosek: `callout.unicode.start.character.xml`

Added support for alternative circled numbers

- David Cramer: `example.properties.xml`

Made `example.properties` use `keep-together='auto'` like `table.properies` to avoid problems ↔
where `example/programlisting` takes more than one page

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphicsize.extension.xml`

Added info about supported image formats.

2.11 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `csharp-hl.xml`

Added LINQ keywords

- Jirka Kosek: `delphi-hl.xml`

Additional keywords from Yuri Zhilin

2.12 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.76.1 release.

- David Cramer: `profile-mode.xml`

When `profile.*` params only consist of space characters, then ignore them.

2.13 Lib

The following changes have been made to the `lib` code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `lib.xweb`

Added two utility templates to make `lib.xsl` work
without reference to other modules since it is used
that way with `profiling/xsl2profile.xml`.

- Robert Stayton: `lib.xweb`

Fix `trim.common.uri.paths` to first resolve any `../` in
the paths.

2.14 Template

The following changes have been made to the template code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `titlepage.xml`

Titlepage mechanism is now namespace aware to support XHTML. Please note that when ↔
generating titlepage template stylesheets you have to pass FO or XHTML namespace ↔
inside `ns` parameter. For HTML parameter should be empty.

2.15 Extensions

The following changes have been made to the extensions code since the 1.76.1 release.

- kasunbg: Makefile

```
webhelp - Adding enable.stemming, toc.file build properties
```

- David Cramer: Makefile

```
Attempt to convince Makefile that webhelpindexer is dirty
```

2.16 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the xsl-saxon code since the 1.76.1 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Verbatim.java; src/com/nwalsh/saxon/FormatGraphicCal...

```
Added fixes to ensure that generated XHTML markup for callouts is in the proper namespace.
```

3 Release Notes: 1.76.1

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.76.0 release.

3.1 FO

The following changes have been made to the fo code since the 1.76.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.xsl; xref.xsl; fop1.xsl

```
Apply patch to support named destination in fop1.xsl, per Sourceforge  
bug report #3029845.
```

3.2 HTML

The following changes have been made to the html code since the 1.76.0 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: highlight.xsl

```
Implementing handling for <b> and <i>: transform to <strong> and <em> for XHTML outputs ↔  
and do not use in the highlighting output (per Mauritz Jeanson)
```

3.3 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.76.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: draft.mode.xml

```
Change default for draft.mode to 'no'.
```

4 Release Notes: 1.76.0

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

Webhelp

A new browser-based, cross-platform help format with full-text search and other features typically found in help systems. See `webhelp/docs/content/ch01.html` for more information and a demo.

Gentext

Many updates and additions to translation/locales thanks to Red Hat, the Fedora Project, and other contributors.

Common

Faster localization support, as language files are loaded on demand.

FO

Support for SVG content in `imagedata` added.

HTML

Output improved when using `'make.clean.html'` and a stock CSS file is now provided.

EPUB

A number of improvements to NCX, cover and image selection, and XHTML 1.1 element choices

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.75.2 release.

4.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.75.2 release.

- `rlandmann: locale/fa.xml`
Update to Persian translation from the Fedora Project
- `rlandmann: locale/nds.xml`
Locale for Low German
- `Mauritz Jeanson: locale/ka.xml; Makefile`
Added support for Georgian based on patch #2917147.
- `rlandmann: locale/nl.xml; locale/ja.xml`
Updated translations from Red Hat and the Fedora Project
- `rlandmann: locale/bs.xml; locale/ru.xml; locale/hr.xml`
Updated locales from Red Hat and the Fedora Project
- `rlandmann: locale/pt.xml; locale/cs.xml; locale/es.xml; locale/bg.xml; locale/nl.xml; loca...`
Updated translations from Red Hat and the Fedora Project
- `rlandmann: locale/as.xml; locale/bn_IN.xml; locale/ast.xml; locale/ml.xml; locale/te.xml; ...`
New translations from Red Hat and the Fedora Project
- `rlandmann: locale/pt.xml; locale/ca.xml; locale/da.xml; locale/sr.xml; locale/ru.xml; loca...`
Updated translations from Red Hat and the Fedora Project

4.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the common code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: common.xsl

Fixed bug in output-orderedlist-starting-number template (@startingnumber did not work for FO).

- Mauritz Jeanson: gentext.xsl

Added fix to catch ID also of descendants of listitem. Closes bug #2955077.

- Jirka Kosek: l10n.xsl

Stripped down, faster version of gentext.template is used when there is no localization customization.

- Mauritz Jeanson: stripns.xsl

Added fix that preserves link/@role (makes links in the reference documentation with @role="tcg" work).

- Mauritz Jeanson: l10n.xsl

Fixed bugs related to manpages and L10n.

- Jirka Kosek: entities.ent; autoidx-kosek.xsl

Upgraded to use common entities. Fixed bug when some code used @sortas and some not for grouping/sorting of indexterms.

- Jirka Kosek: l10n.xsl; l10n.dtd; l10n.xml; autoidx-kosek.xsl

Refactored localization support. Language files are loaded on demand. Speedup is about 30%.

- Jirka Kosek: l10n.xsl

Added xsl:keys for improved performance of localization texts look up. Performance gain around 15%.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xsl

Fixed bug #2912677 (error with xref in title).

- Robert Stayton: olink.xsl

Fix bug in xrefstyle "title" handling introduced with the 'insert.targetdb.data' template.

- Robert Stayton: gentext.xsl

Fix bug in xref to equation without title to use context="xref-number" instead of "xref-number-and-title".

- Robert Stayton: labels.xsl

Number all equations in one sequence, with or without title.

- Robert Stayton: `entities.ent`

Fix bug #2896909 where duplicate `@sortas` on `indexterms` caused some `indexterms` to drop out of index.

- Robert Stayton: `stripns.xsl`

Expand the "Stripping namespace ..." message to advise users to use the namespaced stylesheets.

- Robert Stayton: `stripns.xsl`

need a local version of `$exsl.node.set.available` variable because this module imported many places.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `olink.xsl`

Added `/node()` to the `select` expression that is used to compute the title text so that no `<ttl>` elements end up in the output. Closes bug #2830119.

4.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xsl`

Fix bug 2979166 `able` - Attribute `@rowheader` not working

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Improved `glossterm` auto-linking by using keys. The old code was inefficient ↩
when processing documents
with many inline `glossterms`.

- Robert Stayton: `titlepage.xsl`

Fix bug 2805530 `author/orgname` not appearing on title page.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xsl`

Added support for SVG content in `imagedata` (inspired by patch #2909154).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.xsl`

Removed superfluous test used when computing column-width. Closes bug ↩
#3000898.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Added missing `<xsl:call-template name="anchor"/>`. Closes bug #2998567.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `lists.xsl`

Added `table-layout="fixed"` on `segmentedlist` table (required by XSL spec when ↩
`proportional-column-width()` is used).

- Jirka Kosek: autoidx-kosek.xsl

Upgraded to use common entities. Fixed bug when some code used @sortas and ↔ some not for grouping/sorting of indexterms.

- Jirka Kosek: index.xsl

Upgraded to use common entities. Fixed bug when some code used @sortas and ↔ some not for grouping/sorting of indexterms.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Fix bug in olink template when an olink has an id.
Add warning message with id value when trying to link
to an element that has no generated text.

- Mauritz Jeanson: refentry.xsl

Fixed bug #2930968 (indexterm in refmeta not handled correctly).

- Robert Stayton: block.xsl

fix bug 2949567 title in revhistory breaks FO transform.

- Robert Stayton: glossary.xsl

Output id attributes on glossdiv blocks so they can be added to
xrefs or TOC.

- Jirka Kosek: xref.xsl

Enabled hyphenation of URLs when ulink content is the same as link target

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl

Apply patch to turn off row recursion if no @morerows attributes present.
This will enable very large tables without row spanning to
process without running into recursion limits.

- Robert Stayton: formal.xsl

Format equation without title using table layout with equation number
next to the equation.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent

Add equation.number.properties.

4.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the html code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: block.xsl

Modified acknowledgements template to avoid invalid output (<p> in <p>).

- Mauritz Jeanson: titlepage.xsl

Added default sidebar attribute-sets.

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl

Fix bug 2979166 able - Attribute @rowheader not working

- Robert Stayton: footnote.xsl

Fix bug 3033191 footnotes in html tables.

- Mauritz Jeanson: inline.xsl

Improved glossterm auto-linking by using keys. The old code was inefficient ↔
when processing documents
with many inline glossterms.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.css.xml; verbatim.xsl

Fix bug 2844927 Validity error for callout bugs.

- Robert Stayton: formal.xsl

Convert formal.object.heading to respect make.clean.html param.

- Robert Stayton: titlepage.templates.xml; block.xsl

Fix bug 2840768 sidebar without title inserts empty b tag.

- Mauritz Jeanson: docbook.xsl

Moved the template that outputs <base> so that the base URI also applies to ↔
relative CSS paths that come later.
See patch #2896121.

- Jirka Kosek: autoidx-kosek.xsl

Upgraded to use common entities. Fixed bug when some code used @sortas and ↔
some not for grouping/sorting of indexterms.

- Robert Stayton: chunk-code.xsl

fix bug 2948363 generated filename for refentry not unique, when
used in a set.

- Robert Stayton: component.xsl

Fix missing "Chapter n" label when use chapter/info/title.

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl

Row recursion turned off if no @morerows attributes in the table.
This will prevent failure on long table (with no @morerows) due
to excessive depth of recursion.

- Robert Stayton: autotoc.xsl; docbook.css.xml

Support make.clean.html in autotoc.xsl.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.css.xml; block.xml

Add support for make.clean.html setting in block elements.

- Robert Stayton: docbook.css.xml

Stock CSS styles for DocBook HTML output when 'make.clean.html' is non-zero.

- Robert Stayton: html.xml

Add templates for generating CSS files and links to them.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb

Fix bugs in new entity references.

- Robert Stayton: chunk-common.xml

List of Equations now includes on equations with titles.

- Robert Stayton: table.xml

If a colspec has a colname attribute, add it to the HTML col element as a class attribute so it can be styled.

- Robert Stayton: formal.xml

Fix bug 2825842 where table footnotes not appearing in HTML-coded table.

- Robert Stayton: chunktoc.xml

Fix bug #2834826 where appendix inside part was not chunked as it should be.

- Mauritz Jeanson: chunktoc.xml

Added missing namespace declarations. Closes bug #2890069.

- Mauritz Jeanson: footnote.xml

Updated the template for footnote paras to use the 'paragraph' template. ←
Closes bug #2803739.

- Keith Fahlgren: inline.xml; lists.xml

Remove and <i> elements "discouraged in favor of style sheets" from XHTML, XHTML 1.1 (and therefore EPUB) outputs by changing html2xhtml.xml.

Fixes bug #2873153: No and <i> tags in XHTML/EPUB

Added regression to EPUB specs:

- Mauritz Jeanson: inline.xml

Fixed bug #2844916 (don't output @target if ulink.target is empty).

- Keith Fahlgren: autoidx.xml

Fix a bug when using index.on.type: an 'index symbols' section was created even if that typed index didn't include any symbols (they were in the other types).

4.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `other.xml`

```
Modified the write.stubs template so that the section directory name is not ↵  
output twice. Should fix bug #2831602.  
Also ensured that $lang is added to the .so path (when man.output.lang.in.name.enabled=1).
```

- Mauritz Jeanson: `docbook.xml`; `other.xml`

```
Fixed bug #2412738 (apostrophe escaping) by applying the submitted patch.
```

- Norman Walsh: `block.xml`; `endnotes.xml`

```
Fix bug where simpara in footnote didn't work. Patch by Jonathan Nieder, ↵  
jrnieder@gmail.com
```

- dleident: `lists.xml`

```
Fix two indentation issues: In the first case there is no corresponding .RS  
macro (Debian #519438, sf.net 2793873). In the second case an .RS instead of  
the probably intended .sp leads to an indentation bug (Debian #527309,  
sf.net #2642139).
```

4.6 Epub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/examples/AMasqueOfDays.epub`; `docbook.xml`; `bin/spec/epub_spec.rb`

```
Resolve some actual regressions in date output spotted by more recent versions ↵  
of epubcheck
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`

```
Updated mediaobject selection code that better uses roles (when available); ↵  
based on contributons by Glenn McDonald
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xml`

```
Ensure that NCX documents are always outputted with a default namespace  
to prevent problems with the kindlegen machinery
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `bin/spec/files/partintro.xml`; `docbook.x...`

```
Adding support for partintros with sect2s, 3s, etc
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`

```
Adding param to workaround horrific ADE bug with the inability to process <br>
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`

```
Add support for authorgroup/author in OPF metadata (via Michael Wiedmann)
```

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`

Remove `` and `<i>` elements "discouraged in favor of style sheets" from XHTML, XHTML 1.1 (and therefore EPUB) outputs by changing `html2xhtml.xsl`.

Fixes bug #2873153: No `` and `<i>` tags in XHTML/EPUB

Added regression to EPUB specs:

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/lib/docbook.rb`; `bin/spec/files/DejaVuSerif-Italic.otf`; `docbook.xsl`; `bi...`

This resolves bug #2873142, Please add support for multiple embedded fonts

If you navigate to a checkout of DocBook-XSL and go to:

`xsl/epub/bin/spec/files`

You can now run the following command:

```
../../dbtoepub -f DejaVuSerif.otf -f DejaVuSerif-Italic.otf -c test.css  
-s test_cust.xsl orm.book.001.xml
```

In `dbtoepub`, the following option can be used more than once:

`-f, --font [OTF FILE] Embed OTF FILE in .epub.`

The underlying stylesheet now accepts a comma-separated list of font file names rather than just one as the RENAMED `epub.embedded.fonts` ('s' added).

The runnable EPUB spec now includes:

- should be valid .epub after including more than one embedded font

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xsl`

Improve the selection of cover images when working in DocBook 4.x land (work in progress) ↩

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xsl`

Improve the quality of the OPF spine regression by ensuring that the spine elements for deeply nested refentries are in order and adjacent to their opening wrapper XHTML chunk.

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xsl`; `bin/spec/files/orm.book.00...`

Add more careful handling of refentries to ensure that they always appear in the `opf:spine`. ↩

This was only a problem when refentries were pushed deep into the hierarchy (like inside a `sect2`), but presented navigational problems for many reading systems (despite the correct NCX references). This may *not* be the best solution, but attacking a better chunking strategy for refentries was too big a nut to crack at this time.

4.7 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the eclipse code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `eclipse3.xsl`

Added a stylesheet module that generates plug-ins conforming to the standard (OSGi-based) Eclipse 3.x architecture. The main difference to the older format is that metadata is stored in a separate ↩

manifest file. The module imports and extends the existing eclipse.xsl module. Based on [↔](#)
code
contributed in patch #2624668.

4.8 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.75.2 release.

- Robert Stayton: `draft.watermark.image.xml`

Fix bug 2922488 `draft.watermark.image` pointing to web resource.
Now the value is `images/draft.png`, and may require customization
for local resolution.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `equation.number.properties.xml`

Corrected `refpurpose`.

- Norman Walsh: `paper.type.xml`

Added `USlegal` and `USlegallandscape` paper types.

- Jirka Kosek: `highlight.xslthl.config.xml`

Added note about specifying location as URL

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.css.source.xml`; `generate.css.header.xml`; `custom.css.source.xml`; `ma...`

Params to support generated CSS files.

- Robert Stayton: `equation.number.properties.xml`

New attribute set for numbers appearing next to equations.

4.9 XSL-Xalan

The following changes have been made to the xsl-xalan code since the 1.75.2 release.

- dleident: `nbproject/genfiles.properties`; `nbproject/build-impl.xml`

Rebuild netbeans build files after adding missing Netbeans configuration to [↔](#)
allow easier packaging for Debian.

5 Release Notes: 1.75.2

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.75.1 release.

5.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- dleident: `locale/ja.xml`

Improved Japanese translation for `Note(s)`. Closes bug #2823965.

- dleident: `locale/pl.xml`

Polish alphabet contains `O` with acute accent, not with grave accent. Closes bug #2823964.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/ja.xml`

Fix translation of `"index"`, per bug report 2796064.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/is.xml`

New Icelandic locale file.

5.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Norman Walsh: `stripns.xml`

Support more `downconvert` cases

- Robert Stayton: `titles.xml`

Make sure title inside `info` is used if no other title.

5.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `pi.xml`

Turn off `dbfo-need` for `fop1.extensions` also, per bug #2816141.

5.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Output `"Copyright"` heading in XHTML too.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Added `stylesheet.result.type` test for `copyright`. Closes bug #2813289.

- Norman Walsh: `htmltbl.xml`

Remove ambiguity wrt `@span`, `@rowspan`, and `@colspan`

5.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `endnotes.xml`

Added `normalize-space()` for `ulink` content. Closes bug #2793877.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `docbook.xml`

Added `stylesheet.result.type` test for copyright. Closes bug #2813289.

5.6 Epub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/dbtoepub`; `bin/lib/docbook.rb`

Corrected bugs caused by path and file assumptions were not met

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/lib/docbook.rb`; `docbook.xml`

Cleaning up hardcoded values into parameters and fixing Ruby library to pass them properly ↔
; all thanks to patch from Liza Daly

5.7 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Robert Stayton: `profile.xml`

Fix bug 2815493 missing `exsl.node.set.available` parameter.

5.8 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-saxon` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `src/com/nwalsh/saxon/ColumnUpdateEmitter.java`; `src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Colum...`

Added fixes so that colgroups in the XHTML namespace are processed properly.

5.9 XSL-Xalan

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-xalan` code since the 1.75.1 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `nbproject/project.xml`

Added missing NetBeans configuration.

6 Release Notes: 1.75.1

This release includes bug fixes.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.75.0 release.

6.1 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.75.0 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `block.xsl`

Switching to em dash for character before attribution in epigraph; resolves Bug #2793878

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

Fixed bug 2789947, id attribute missing on simplelist fo output.

6.2 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.75.0 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `block.xsl`

Switching to em dash for character before attribution in epigraph; resolves Bug #2793878

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

Fixed bug 2789678: apply-templates line accidentally deleted.

6.3 Epub

The following changes have been made to the `epub` code since the 1.75.0 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xsl`

Added regression and fix to correct "bug" with namespace-prefixed container elements in `↔` META-INF/container.xml ; resolves Issue #2790017

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `bin/spec/files/onegraphic.xinclude.xml`;...

Another attempt at flexible named entity and XInclude processing

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/lib/docbook.rb`

Tweaking solution to Bug #2750442 following regression reported by Michael Wiedmann.

6.4 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.75.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `highlight.source.xml`

Updated documentation to reflect changes made in r8419.

7 Release Notes: 1.75.0

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

Gentext

Modifications to translations have been made.

Common

Added support for some format properties on tables using HTML `table` markup.

Added two new `qanda.defaultlabel` values so that numbered sections and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies Feature Request #1539045.

Added code to handle `acknowledgements` in `book` and `part`. The element is processed similarly to `dedication`. All `acknowledgements` will appear as front matter, after any dedications.

FO

The inclusion of highlighting code has been simplified.

Add support for `pgwide` on informal objects.

Added a new parameter, `bookmarks.collapse`, that controls the initial state of the bookmark tree. Closes FR #1792326.

Add support for more `dbfo` processing instructions.

Add new `variablelist.term.properties` to format terms, per request # 1968513.

Add support for `@width` on `screen` and `programlisting`, fixes bug #2012736.

Add support for `writing-mode="rl-tb"` (right-to-left) in FO outputs.

Add `writing.mode` param for FO output.

HTML

Convert all calls to `class.attribute` to calls to `common.html.attributes` to support `dir`, `lang`, and `title` attributes in `html` output for all elements. Fulfills feature request #1993833.

Inclusion of highlighting code was simplified. Only one import is now necessary.

Add new param `index.links.to.section`.

Add support for the new `index.links.to.section` param which permits precise links to `indexterms` in HTML output rather than to the `section title`.

ePub

Slightly more nuanced handling of `imageobject` alternatives and better support in `dbtoepub` for `XIncludes` and `ENTITYs` to resolve Issue #2750442 reported by Raphael Hertzog.

Added a colon after an `abstract/title` when mapping into the `dc:description` for OPF metadata in ePub output to help the flat text have more pseudo-semantics (suggestions from Michael Wiedmann)

Added DocBook `subjectset` -> OPF `dc:subject` mapping and tests

Added DocBook `date` -> OPF `dc:date` mapping and tests

Added DocBook `abstract` -> OPF `dc:description` mapping and tests

Added `--output` option to `dbtoepub` based on user request

HTMLHelp

Add support for generating `olink` target database for `htmlhelp` files.

Params

Add default setting for `@rules` attribute on HTML markup tables.

Added a new parameter, `bookmarks.collapse`, that controls the initial state of the bookmark tree. When the parameter has a non-zero value (the default), only the top-level bookmarks are displayed initially. Otherwise, the whole tree of bookmarks is displayed. This is implemented for FOP 0.9X. Closes FR #1792326.

Add new `variablelist.term.properties` to format terms, per request # 1968513.

Add two new `qanda.defaultlabel` values so that numbered sections and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies Feature Request #1539045.

Add param to control whether an index entry links to a section title or to the precise location of the index term.

New attribute list for `glossentry` in `glossary`.

New parameter to support `@width` on `programlisting` and `screen`.

Add attribute-sets for formatting `glossary` terms and defs.

Highlighting

Inclusion of highlighting code was simplified. Only one import is now necessary.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.74.3 release.

7.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/sv.xml`; `locale/ja.xml`; `locale/pl.xml`

Check in translations of Legalnotice submitted on mailing list.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/es.xml`

Fix spelling errors in Acknowledgements entries.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/es.xml`

Check in translations for 4 elements submitted through docbook-apps message of 14 April 2009.

- David Cramer: `locale/zh.xml`; `locale/ca.xml`; `locale/ru.xml`; `locale/ga.xml`; `locale/gl.xml`; 1...

Internationalized punctuation in `glosssee` and `glossseealso`

- Robert Stayton: `Makefile`

Check in fixes for DSSSL `gentext` targets from submitted patch #1689633.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/uk.xml`

Check in major update submitted with bug report #2008524.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/zh_tw.xml`

Check in fix to Note string submitted in bug #2441051.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/ru.xml`

Check in typo fix submitted in bug #2453406.

7.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `gentext.xsl`

Fix extra generated space when `xrefstyle` includes `'nopage'`.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xsl`

Add support for some format properties on tables using HTML table markup. These include:

- `frame` attribute on `table` (or uses `$default.table.frame` parameter).
- `rules` attribute on `table` (or uses `$default.table.rules` parameter).
- `align` attribute on `td` and `th`
- `valign` attribute on `td` and `th`
- `colspan` on `td` and `th`
- `rowspan` on `td` and `th`
- `bgcolor` on `td` and `th`

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xsl`

Add placeholder template to massage olink hot text to make customization easier, per Feature Request 1828608.

- Robert Stayton: `targets.xsl`

Add support for collecting olink targets from a glossary generated from a `glossary.collection`.

- Robert Stayton: `titles.xsl`

Handle `firstterm` like `glossterm` in `mode="title.markup"`.

- Robert Stayton: `titles.xsl`

Add match on `info/title` in `title.markup` templates where missing.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titles.xsl`

Changed `"ancestor::title"` to `"(ancestor::title and (@id or @xml:id))"`. This enables proper formatting of inline elements in titles in TOCs, as long as these inlines don't have `id` or `xml:id` attributes.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xsl`

Add two new `qanda.defaultlabel` values so that numbered sections and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies Feature Request #1539045.

- Robert Stayton: `stripns.xsl`; `pi.xsl`

Convert function-available(`exsl:node-set`) to use the new param so Xalan bug is isolated.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titles.xsl`

Added fixes for bugs #2112656 and #1759205:

1. Reverted mistaken commits `r7485` and `r7523`.
2. Updated the template with `match="link"` and `mode="no.anchor.mode"` so that `@endterm` is used if it exists and if the link has no content.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titles.xml`

Added code to handle acknowledgements in book and part. The element is processed similarly to dedication. All acknowledgements will appear as front matter, after any dedications.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Fix bug #2018717 `use.local.olink.style` uses wrong gentext context.

- Robert Stayton: `olink.xml`

Fix bug #1787167 incorrect hot text for some olinks.

- Robert Stayton: `common.xml`

Fix bug #1669654 Broken output if copyright `<year>` contains a range.

- Robert Stayton: `labels.xml`

Fix bug in labelling figure inside appendix inside article inside book.

7.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `highlight.xml`

Inclusion of highlighting code was simplified. Only one import is now necessary.

- Robert Stayton: `fop1.xml`

Add the new `fop` extensions namespace declaration, in case FOP extension functions are used.

- Robert Stayton: `formal.xml`

Add support for `pgwide` on informal objects.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.xml`

Fixed spurious closing quote on line 134.

- Robert Stayton: `docbook.xml`; `autoidx-kosek.xml`; `autoidx.xml`

Convert `function-available` for `node-set()` to use new `$xsl.node.set.available` param in test.

- David Cramer: `xref.xml`

Suppress extra space after `xref` when `xrefstyle='select: label nopage'` (#2740472)

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`

Fixed doc bug for `row-height`.

- David Cramer: `glossary.xml`

Internationalized punctuation in glossee and glosseealso

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent; htmltbl.xsl; table.xsl

Add support for some format properties on tables using HTML table markup. These include:

- frame attribute on table (or uses \$default.table.frame parameter).
- rules attribute on table (or uses \$default.table.rules parameter).
- align attribute on td and th
- valign attribute on td and th
- colspan on td and th
- rowspan on td and th
- bgcolor on td and th

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl

Add support bgcolor in td and th elements in HTML table markup.

- Robert Stayton: htmltbl.xsl

Add support for colspan and rowspan and bgcolor in td and th elements in HTML table markup.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb

Fix working of page-master left and right margins.

- Mauritz Jeanson: param.xweb; param.ent; fop1.xsl

Added a new parameter, `bookmarks.collapse`, that controls the initial state of the bookmark tree. When the parameter has a non-zero value (the default), only the top-level bookmarks are displayed initially. Otherwise, the whole tree of bookmarks is displayed. This is implemented for FOP 0.9X. Closes FR #1792326.

- Robert Stayton: table.xsl; pi.xsl

Add support for `dbfo` row-height processing instruction, like that in `dbhtml`.

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl

Add support for `dbfo` keep-together processing instruction for entire list instances.

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl; block.xsl

Add support for `dbfo` keep-together processing instruction to more blocks like list items and paras.

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl; param.xweb; param.ent

Add new `variablelist.term.properties` to format terms, per request # 1968513.

- Robert Stayton: inline.xsl

In `simple.xlink`, rearrange order of processing.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Handle firstterm like glossterm in mode="xref-to".

- Robert Stayton: glossary.xsl; xref.xsl; pi.xsl; footnote.xsl

Implement simple.xlink for glossee and glosseeseealso so they can use other types of linking besides otherterm.

- Robert Stayton: qandaset.xsl

Add two new qanda.defaultlabel values so that numbered sections and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies Feature Request #1539045.

- Robert Stayton: titlepage.xsl

For the book title templates, I changed info/title to book/info/title so other element's titles will not be affected.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl; verbatim.xsl

Use param exsl.node.set.available to test for function.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent; footnote.xsl

Start using new param exsl.node.set.available to work around Xalan bug.

- Robert Stayton: titlepage.templates.xml

Add comment on use of t:predicate for editor to prevent extra processing of multiple editors. Fixes bug 2687842.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl; autoidx.xsl

An indexterm primary, secondary, or tertiary element with an id or xml:id now outputs that ID, so that index entries can be cross referenced to.

- Mauritz Jeanson: synop.xsl

Added modeless template for ooclass|oointerface|ooexception. Closes bug #1623468.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Add template with match on indexterm in mode="xref-to" to fix bug 2102592.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Now xref to qandaentry will use the label element in a question for the link text if it has one.

- Robert Stayton: inline.xsl

Add id if specified from @id to output for quote and phrase so they can be xref'ed to.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Add support for xref to phrase, simpara, anchor, and quote. This assumes the author specifies something using xrefstyle since the elements don't have ordinary link text.

- Robert Stayton: `toc.xsl`

Fix bug in new toc templates.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xsl`; `component.xsl`; `division.xsl`; `xref.xsl`; `titlepage.templates...`

Added code to handle acknowledgements in book and part. The element is processed similarly to dedication. All acknowledgements will appear as front matter, after any dedications.

- Robert Stayton: `toc.xsl`

Rewrite toc templates to support an empty toc or populated toc in all permitted contexts. Same for lot elements. This fixes bug #1595969 for FO outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `index.xsl`

Fix indents for `seealso` so they are consistent.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `param.xweb`

Removed duplicate `(monospace.font.family)`.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add `glossentry.list.item.properties`.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add `monospace.verbatim.font.width` param to support `@width` on `programlisting`.

- Robert Stayton: `verbatim.xsl`

Put `programlisting` in `fo:block-container` with `writing-mode="lr-tb"` when text direction is right to left because all program languages are left-to-right.

- Robert Stayton: `verbatim.xsl`

Add support for `@width` on `screen` and `programlisting`, fixes bug #2012736.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Fix bug #1973585 `xref` to `para` with `xrefstyle` not handled correctly.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `block.xsl`

Added support for acknowledgements in article. Support in book/part remains to be added.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Fix bug #1787167 incorrect hot text for some olinks.

- Robert Stayton: `fo.xsl`

Add `writing-mode="tb-rl"` as well since some XSL-FO processors support it.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`; `lists.xsl`; `glossary.xsl`; `fo.xsl`; `table.xsl`; `pagesetup.xsl`

Add support for `writing-mode="rl-tb"` (right-to-left) in FO outputs. Changed instances of `margin-left` to `margin-{$direction.align.start}` and `margin-right` to `margin-{$direction.align.end}`. Those `direction.align` params are computed from the writing mode value in each locale's gentext key named `'writing-mode'`, introduced in 1.74.3 to add right-to-left support to HTML outputs.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add `attribute-sets` for formatting glossary terms and defs.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add `writing.mode` param for FO output.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

Fix bug 1546008: in `qandaentry` in a TOC, use its `blockinfo/titleabbrev` or `blockinfo/title` instead of `question`, if available. For DocBook 5, use the `info` versions.

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xsl`

Add better pointer to README for XSLTHL

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xsl`

More tweaking the way that XSLTHL does or does not get called

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xsl`

Alternate attempt at sanely including/excluding XSLTHT code

7.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

Removed redundant `lang` and `title` attributes on list element inside `div` element for lists.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`; `titlepage.xsl`; `division.xsl`; `toc.xsl`; `sections.xsl`; `table.xsl`;...

Convert all calls to `class.attribute` to calls to `common.html.attributes` to support `dir`, `lang`, and `title` attributes in html output for all elements. Fulfills feature request #1993833.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xsl`

Fix bug #2750253 wrong links in list of figures in `chunk.html` when target `html` is in a subdirectory and `dbhtml` filename used.

- Jirka Kosek: `highlight.xsl`

Inclusion of highlighting code was simplified. Only one import is now necessary.

- Robert Stayton: chunk-common.xsl; chunktoc.xsl; docbook.xsl; chunk-changebars.xsl; autoidx...

Convert function-available for node-set() to use
new \$exsl.node.set.available param in test.

- Mauritz Jeanson: pi.xsl

Fixed doc bug for row-height.

- David Cramer: glossary.xsl

Internationalized punctuation in glossee and glosseealso

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl; html.xsl; block.xsl

More elements get common.html.attributes.
Added locale.html.attributes template which does the lang,
dir, and title attributes, but not the class attribute
(used on para, for example).

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl

Replace more literal classatts with mode="class.attribute" to support
easier customization.

- Robert Stayton: glossary.xsl

Support olinking in glossee and glosseealso.

- Robert Stayton: inline.xsl

In simple.xlink, rearrange order of processing.

- Robert Stayton: xref.xsl

Handle firstterm like glossterm in mode="xref-to".

- Robert Stayton: lists.xsl; html.xsl; block.xsl

Added template named common.html.attributes to output
class, title, lang, and dir for most elements.
Started adding it to some list and block elements.

- Robert Stayton: qandaset.xsl

Add two new qanda.defaultlabel values so that numbered sections
and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies
Feature Request #1539045.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; chunk-code.xsl; param.ent; xref.xsl; chunkfast.xsl; verbatim.x...

Use new param exsl.node.set.available to test, handles Xalan bug.

- Robert Stayton: autoidx.xsl

Use named anchors for primary, secondary, and tertiary ids so
duplicate entries with different ids can still have an id output.

- Robert Stayton: param.xweb; param.ent

Add new param `index.links.to.section`.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`; `autoidx.xsl`

Pass through an `id` on primary, secondary, or tertiary to the index entry, so that one could link to an index entry. You can't link to the `id` on an `indexterm` because that is used to place the main anchor in the text flow.

- Robert Stayton: `autoidx.xsl`

Add support for the new `index.links.to.section` param which permits precise links to `indexterms` in HTML output rather than to the section title.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `synop.xsl`

Added modeless template for `ooclass|oointerface|ooexception`. Closes bug #1623468.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xsl`

Make sure a `qandaset` has an anchor, even when it has no title, because it may be referenced in a TOC or `xref`. Before, the anchor was output by the title, but there was no anchor if there was no title.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Add a template for `indexterm` with `mode="xref-to"` to fix bug 2102592.

- Robert Stayton: `xref.xsl`

Now `xref` to `qandaentry` will use the `label` element in a question for the link text if it has one.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xsl`; `html.xsl`

Create separate templates for computing label of question and answer in a `qandaentry`, so such can be used for the alt text of an `xref` to a `qandaentry`.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`; `xref.xsl`

Now support `xref` to `phrase`, `simpara`, `anchor`, and `quote`, most useful when an `xrefstyle` is used.

- Robert Stayton: `toc.xsl`

Rewrite `toc` templates to support an empty `toc` or populated `toc` in all permitted contexts. Same for `lot` elements. This fixes bug #1595969 for HTML outputs.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xsl`; `component.xsl`; `division.xsl`; `xref.xsl`; `titlepage.templates...`

Added code to handle acknowledgements in book and part. The element is processed similarly to dedication. All acknowledgements will appear as front matter, after any dedications.

- Robert Stayton: `index.xsl`

Rewrote primaryie, secondaryie and tertiaryie templates to handle nesting of elements and seeie and seealsoie, as reported in bug # 1168912.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xsl`

Fix simplesect in toc problem.

- Robert Stayton: `verbatim.xsl`

Add support for @width per bug report #2012736.

- Robert Stayton: `formal.xsl`; `htmltbl.xsl`

Fix bug #1787140 HTML tables not handling attributes correctly.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`

Move writing-mode param.

- Keith Fahlgren: `refentry.xsl`

Remove a nesting of `<p>` inside `<p>` for refclass (made XHTML* invalid, made HTML silly)

- Robert Stayton: `table.xsl`

Fix bug #1945872 to allow passthrough of colwidth values to HTML table when no tablecolumns.extension is available and when no instance of * appears in the table's colspecs.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `block.xsl`

Added support for acknowledgements in article.
Support in book/part remains to be added.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xsl`

Fix bug #1787167 incorrect hot text for some olinks.

- Robert Stayton: `qandaset.xsl`

Fix bug 1546008: in qandaentry in a TOC, use its blockinfo/titleabbrev or blockinfo/title instead of question, if available. For DocBook 5, use the info versions.

- Robert Stayton: `chunktoc.xsl`

Add support for generating olink database when using chunktoc.xsl.

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xsl`

Add better pointer to README for XSLTHL

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xsl`

Another stab at fixing the stupid XSLTHT includes across processors (Saxon regression ← reported by Sorin Ristache)

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xml`

More tweaking the way that XSLTHL does or does not get called

- Keith Fahlgren: `verbatim.xml`

Alternate attempt at sanely including/excluding XSLTHT code

7.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xml`

Convert function-available test for `node-set()` function to test of `$exsl.node.set.available` param.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `lists.xml`

Added a template for `bibliolist`. Closes bug #1815916.

7.6 ePub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `bin/spec/files/onegraphic.xinclude.xml`;...

Slightly more nuanced handling of `imageobject` alternatives and better support in `dbtoepub` ↔ for `XIncludes` and `ENTITIES` to resolve Issue #2750442 reported by Raphael Hertzog.

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`

Add a colon after an `abstract/title` when mapping into the `dc:description` for OPF metadata ↔ in ePub output to help the flat text have more pseudo-semantics (suggestions from ↔ Michael Wiedmann)

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xml`; `bin/spec/files/de.xml`

Correctly set `dc:language` in OPF metadata when `il8nizing`. Closes Bug #2755150

- Keith Fahlgren: `bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb`; `docbook.xml`

Corrected namespace declarations for literal XHTML elements to make them serialize " ↔ normally"

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`

Be a little bit more nuanced about dates

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`; `bin/spec/epub_realbook_spec.rb`; `bin/spec/files/orm.book.001.x...`

Add DocBook `subjectset` -> OPF `dc:subject` mapping and tests

- Keith Fahlgren: `docbook.xml`; `bin/spec/epub_realbook_spec.rb`; `bin/spec/files/orm.book.001.x...`

Add DocBook `date` -> OPF `dc:date` mapping and tests

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xml; bin/spec/epub_realbook_spec.rb; bin/spec/files/orm.book.001.x...
Add DocBook abstract -> OPF dc:description mapping and tests
- Robert Stayton: docbook.xml
Check in patch submitted by user to add opf:file-as attribute to dc:creator element.
- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub
Adding --output option to dbtoepub based on user request
- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xml; bin/spec/epub_spec.rb
Cleaning and regularizing the generation of namespaced nodes for OPF, NCX, XHTML and other
outputted filetypes (hat tip to bobstayton for pointing out the silly, incorrect code
)
- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb; bin/spec/files/refclass.xml
Remove a nesting of <p> inside <p> for refclass (made XHTML* invalid, made HTML silly)
- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb; bin/spec/files/blockquotepre.xml
Added regression test and fix for XHTML validation problem with <a>s added inside <
blockquote>; This potentially causes another problem (where something is referenced by
has no anchor, but someone reporting that should cause the whole
thing to be reconsidered with modern browsers in mind.

7.7 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the `htmlhelp` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `htmlhelp-common.xml`
Add support for generating olink target database for htmlhelp files.

7.8 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Robert Stayton: `default.table.rules.xml`
Add default setting for @rules attribute on HTML markup tables.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `bookmarks.collapse.xml`
Added a new parameter, `bookmarks.collapse`, that controls the initial state of the bookmark tree. When the parameter has a non-zero value (the default), only the top-level bookmarks are displayed initially. Otherwise, the whole tree of bookmarks is displayed.

This is implemented for FOP 0.9X. Closes FR #1792326.
- Robert Stayton: `variablelist.term.properties.xml`

Add new `variablelist.term.properties` to format terms, per request # 1968513.

- Robert Stayton: `qanda.defaultlabel.xml`

Add two new `qanda.defaultlabel` values so that numbered sections and numbered questions can be distinguished. Satisfies Feature Request #1539045.

- Robert Stayton: `index.links.to.section.xml`

Change default to 1 to match past behavior.

- Robert Stayton: `exsl.node.set.available.xml`

Isolate this text for Xalan bug regarding `exsl:node-set` available. If it is ever fixed in Xalan, just fix it here.

- Robert Stayton: `index.links.to.section.xml`

Add param to control whether an index entry links to a `sectiontitle` or to the precise location of the `indexterm`.

- Robert Stayton: `glossentry.list.item.properties.xml`

New attribute list for glossentry in glossary.

- Robert Stayton: `monospace.verbatim.font.width.xml`

New parameter to support `@width` on `programlisting` and `screen`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `highlight.source.xml`

Updated and reorganized the description.

- Robert Stayton: `page.margin.outer.xml`; `page.margin.inner.xml`

Add caveat about XEP bug when `writing-mode` is `right-to-left`.

- Robert Stayton: `article.appendix.title.properties.xml`; `writing.mode.xml`; `body.start.indent...`

Change 'left' to 'start' and 'right' to 'end' to support `right-to-left` writing mode.

- Robert Stayton: `glossdef.block.properties.xml`; `glossdef.list.properties.xml`; `glossterm.blo...`

Add attribute-sets for formatting glossary terms and defs.

- Robert Stayton: `glossterm.separation.xml`

Clarify the description.

- Robert Stayton: `make.year.ranges.xml`

Now handles `year` element containing a comma or dash without error.

7.9 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the `highlighting` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `README`

Inclusion of highlighting code was simplified. Only one import is now necessary.

- Keith Fahlgren: `README`

Adding XSLTHL readme

- Keith Fahlgren: `common.xsl`

Alternate attempt at sanely including/excluding XSLTHT code

7.10 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-saxon` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Text.java`

Added a fix that prevents output of extra blank line.
Hopefully this closes bug #894805.

7.11 XSL-Xalan

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-xalan` code since the 1.74.3 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Text.java`

Added a fix that prevents output of extra blank line.
Hopefully this closes bug #894805.

8 Release Notes: 1.74.3

This release fixes some bugs in the 1.74.2 release.

See `highlighting/README` for XSLTHL usage instructions.

9 Release Notes: 1.74.2

This release fixes some bugs in the 1.74.1 release.

10 Release Notes: 1.74.1

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

Gentext

Kirghiz locale added and Chinese translations have been simplified.
Somme support for gentext and right-to-left languages has been added.

FO

Various bugs have been resolved.
Support for a new processing instruction: `dbfo funcsynopsis-style` has been added.
Added new param `email.mailto.enabled` for FO output. Patch from Paolo Borelli.
Support for documented metadata in fop1 mode has been added.

Highlighting

Support for the latest version of XSLTHL 2.0 and some new language syntaxes have been added to a variety of outputs.

Manpages

Added `man.output.better.ps.enabled` param (zero default). If non-zero, no such markup is embedded in generated man pages, and no enhancements are included in the PostScript output generated from those man pages by the `man -Tps` command.

HTML

Support for `writing.mode` to set text direction and `alignment` based on document locale has been added.
Added a new top-level stylesheet module, `chunk-changebars.xsl`, to be used for generating chunked output with highlighting based on `change (@revisionflag)` markup. The module imports/includes the standard chunking and changebars templates and contains additional logic for chunked output. See FRs #1015180 and #1819915.

ePub

Covers now look better in Adobe Digital Editions thanks to a patch from Paul Norton of Adobe
Cover handling now more generic (including limited DocBook 5.0 cover support thanks to patch contributed by Liza Daly.
Cover markup now carries more reliably into files destined for .mobi and the Kindle.
`dc:identifiers` are now generated from more types of numbering schemes.
Both SEO and semantic structure of chunked ePub output by ensuring that we always send out one and only one `h1` in each XHTML chunk.
Primitive support for embedding a single font added.
Support for embedding a CSS customizations added.

Roundtrip

Support for `imagedata-metadata` and `table` as images added.
Support for `imagedata-metadata` and `legalnotice` as images added.

Params

`man.output.better.ps.enabled` added for Manpages output
`writing.mode.xml` added to set text direction.
Added new param `email.mailto.enabled` for FO output. Patch from Paolo Borelli. Closes #2086321.
`highlight.source` upgraded to support the latest version of XSLTHL 2.0.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.74.0 release.

10.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/ky.xml`; `Makefile`

new Kirghiz locale from Ilyas Bakirov

- Mauritz Jeanson: `locale/en.xml`
Added "Acknowledgements".
- Dongsheng Song: `locale/zh_cn.xml`
Simplified Chinese translation.
- Robert Stayton: `locale/lv.xml`; `locale/ca.xml`; `locale/pt.xml`; `locale/tr.xml`; `locale/af.xml`;...
Add writing-mode gentext string to support right-to-left languages.

10.2 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.74.0 release.

- David Cramer: `footnote.xml`
Added a check to confirm that a `footnoteref`'s `linkend` points to a footnote. Stylesheets [↔](#)
stop processing if not and provide a useful error message.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `spaces.xml`
Convert spaces to `fo:leader` also in elements in the DB 5 namespace.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`; `synop.xml`
Added support for a new processing instruction: `dbfo funcsynopsis-style`.
Closes bug #1838213.
- Michael(tm) Smith: `inline.xml`; `param.xweb`; `param.ent`
Added new param `email.mailto.enabled` for FO output.
Patch from Paolo Borelli. Closes #2086321.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `docbook.xml`
Added support for document metadata for `fop1` (patch #2067318).
- Jirka Kosek: `param.ent`; `param.xweb`; `highlight.xml`
Upgraded to support the latest version of XSLTHL 2.0
-- nested markup in `highlighted` code is now processed
-- it is no longer needed to specify path XSLTHL configuration file using Java property
-- support for new languages, including Perl, Python and Ruby was added

10.3 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `docbook.xml`; `param.ent`; `html.xml`
Add support for `writing.mode` to set text direction and alignment based on document locale.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `chunk-changebars.xml`
Added a new top-level stylesheet module, `chunk-changebars.xml`, to be
used for generating chunked output with highlighting based on change
(`@revisionflag`) markup. The module imports/includes the standard chunking
and changebars templates and contains additional logic for chunked output.
See FRs #1015180 and #1819915.

10.4 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: docbook.xsl

```
Put the following at the top of generated roff for each page:
\" t
purpose is to explicitly tell AT&T troff that the page needs to be
pre-processed through tbl(1); groff can figure it out
automatically, but apparently AT&T troff needs to be explicitly told
```

10.5 ePub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl

```
Patch from Paul Norton of Adobe to get covers to look better in Adobe Digital Editions
```

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb; bin/spec/files/v5cover.xml; bin/spec/sp...

```
Patch contributed by Liza Daly to make ePub cover handling more generic. Additionally
DocBook 5.0's <cover> now has some limited support:
```

```
- should reference a cover in the OPF guide for a DocBook 5.0 test document
```

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/files/isbn.xml; bin/spec/files/issn.xml; bin/spec/files/biblioid...

```
Liza Daly reported that the dc:identifer-generation code was garbage (she was right).
```

```
Added new tests:
```

```
- should include at least one dc:identifier
- should include an ISBN as URN for dc:identifier if an ISBN was in the metadata
- should include an ISSN as URN for dc:identifier if an ISSN was in the metadata
- should include an biblioid as a dc:identifier if an biblioid was in the metadata
- should include a URN for a biblioid with @class attribute as a dc:identifier if an ↵
  biblioid was in the metadata
```

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl; bin/spec/epub_spec.rb

```
Improve both SEO and semantic structure of chunked ePub output by ensuring that
we always send out one and only one h1 in each XHTML chunk.
```

```
DocBook::Epub
```

```
- should include one and only one <h1> in each HTML file in rendered ePub files
for <book>s
- should include one and only one <h1> in each HTML file in rendered ePub files
for <book>s even if they do not have section markup
```

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl; bin/spec/epub_realbook_spec.rb; bin/spec/files/orm.book.001.x...

```
Adding better support for covers in epub files destined for .mobi and the Kindle
```

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub; bin/lib/docbook.rb; bin/spec/files/DejaVuSerif.otf; docbook...

```
Adding primitive support for embedding a single font
```

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub; bin/lib/docbook.rb; bin/spec/files/test_cust.xsl; bin/spec/e...
Adding support for user-specified customization layers in dbtoepub

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub; bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb; bin/lib/docbook.rb; bin/s...
Adding CSS support to .epub target & dbtoepub:
-c, --css [FILE] Use FILE for CSS on generated XHTML.

DocBook::Epub

...

- should include a CSS link in HTML files when a CSS file has been provided
- should include CSS file in .epub when a CSS file has been provided
- should include a CSS link in OPF file when a CSS file has been provided

10.6 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the roundtrip code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; template.xml; template.dot

added support for imagedata-metadata
added support for table as images

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; normalise2sections.xsl; sections2blocks.xsl

Improved support for personname inlines.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; blocks2dbk.dtd; template.xml

Added support for legalnotice.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl

added support for orgname in author

- Steve Ball: specifications.xml; supported.xml; blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl; dbk2w...

Updated specification.
to-DocBook: add cols attribute to tgroup
from-DocBook: fix for blockquote title

10.7 Params

The following changes have been made to the params since the 1.74.0 release.

- The change was to add man.output.better.ps.enabled parameter, with its default value set to zero. If the value of the man.output.better.ps.enabled parameter is non-zero, certain markup is embedded in each generated man page such that PostScript output from the man -Tps command for that page will include a number of enhancements designed to improve the quality of that output. If man.output.better.ps.enabled is zero (the default), no such markup is embedded in generated man pages, and no enhancements are included in the PostScript output generated from those man pages by the man -Tps command. WARNING: The enhancements provided by this parameter rely on features that are specific to groff (GNU troff) and that are not part of "classic" AT&T troff or any of its derivatives. Therefore, any man pages you generate with this parameter enabled will be readable only on systems on which the groff (GNU troff) program is installed, such as GNU/Linux systems. The pages will not be readable on systems on which the classic troff (AT&T troff) command is installed. NOTE: The value of this parameter only affects PostScript output generated from the man command. It has no effect on output generated using the FO backend. TIP: You can generate PostScript output for any man page by running the following command: man FOO -Tps > FOO.ps You can then generate PDF output by running the following command: ps2pdf FOO.ps

- Robert Stayton: `writing.mode.xml`

```
writing mode param used to set text direction.
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `email.mailto.enabled.xml`

```
Added new param email.mailto.enabled for FO output.  
Patch from Paolo Borelli. Closes #2086321.
```

- Jirka Kosek: `highlight.source.xml`; `highlight.xslthl.config.xml`

```
Upgraded to support the latest version of XSLTHL 2.0  
-- nested markup in highlited code is now processed  
-- it is no longer needed to specify path XSLTHL configuration file using Java property  
-- support for new languages, including Perl, Python and Ruby was added
```

10.8 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.74.0 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `cpp-hl.xml`; `c-hl.xml`; `tcl-hl.xml`; `php-hl.xml`; `common.xsl`; `perl-hl.xml`; `delphi...`

```
Upgraded to support the latest version of XSLTHL 2.0  
-- nested markup in highlited code is now processed  
-- it is no longer needed to specify path XSLTHL configuration file using Java property  
-- support for new languages, including Perl, Python and Ruby was added
```

11 Release Notes: 1.74.0

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

.epub target

Paul Norton (Adobe) and Keith Fahlgren (O'Reilly Media) have donated code that generates .epub documents from DocBook input. An alpha-reference implementation in Ruby has also been provided.

.epub is an open standard of the The International Digital Publishing Forum (IDPF), a the trade and standards association for the digital publishing industry.

Read more about this target in `epub/README`

XHTML 1.1 target

To support .epub output, a strict XHTML 1.1 target has been added. The stylesheets for this output are generated and are quite similar to the XHTML target.

Gentext updates

A number of locales have been updated.

Roundtrip improvements

Table, figure, template synchronization, and character style improvements have been made for WordML & Pages. Support added for OpenOffice.org.

First implementation of a libxslt extension

A stylesheet extension for libxslt, written in Python, has been added. The extension is a function for adjusting column widths in CALS tables. See `extensions/README.LIBXSLT` for more information.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.73.2 release.

11.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/id.xml`

Checked in changes to Indonesian locale submitted by Euis Luhuanam a long time ago.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/lt.xml`

Added changes to Lithuanian locale submitted a long time back by Nikolajus Krauklis.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/hu.xml`

fixed error in `lowercase.alpha` definition in Hungarian locale

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/nb.xml`

Corrected language code for nb locale, and restored missing "startquote" key.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/ja.xml`

Committed changes to ja locale file, from Akagi Kobayashi. Adds bracket quotes around many `<xref` instances that did not have them before.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`

"no" locale is now "nb"

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/nb.xml`

Update Norwegian Bokmål translation. Thanks to Hans F. Nordhaug.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/no.xml`; `locale/nb.xml`

per message from Hans F. Nordhaug, correct identifier for Norwegian Bokmål is "nb" (not "no") and has been for quite some time now...

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/ja.xml`

Converted ja.xml source file to use real unicode characters so that the actual glyphs show up when you edit it in a text editor (instead of the character references).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/ja.xml`

Checked in changes to ja.xml locale file. Thanks to Akagi Kobayashi.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/it.xml`

Changes from Federico Zenith

- Dongsheng Song: `locale/zh_cn.xml`

Added missing translations.

11.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the common code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: l10n.xsl

Added new template "l10.language.name" for retrieving the English-language name of the lang setting of the current document. Closes #1916837. Thanks to Simon Kennedy.

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xsl

fixed syntax error

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xsl

fixed a couple of typos

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xsl

refined handling of cases where refentry "source" or "manual" metadata is missing or when we use fallback content instead. We now report a Warning if we use fallback content.

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xsl

don't use refmiscinfo@class=date value as fallback for refentry "source" or "manual" metadata fields

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xsl

Made reporting of missing refentry metadata more quiet:

- we no longer report anything if usable-but-not-preferred metadata is found; we just quietly use whatever we manage to find
- we now only report missing "source" metadata if the refentry is missing BOTH "source name" and "version" metadata; if it has one but not the other, we use whichever one it has and don't report anything as missing

The above changes were made because testing with some "real world" source reveals that some authors are intentionally choosing to use "non preferred" markup for some metadata, and also choosing to omit "source name" or "version" metadata in there DocBook XML. So it does no good to give them pedantic reminders about what they already know...

Also, changed code to cause "fixme" text to be inserted in output in particular cases:

- if we can't manage to find any "source" metadata at all, we now put fixme text into the output
- if we can't manage to find any "manual" metadata a all, we now put fixme text into the output

The "source" and "manual" metadata is necessary information, so buy putting the fixme stuff in the output, we alert users to the need problem of it being missing.

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xml

When generating manpages output, we no longer report anything if the refentry source is missing date or pubdate content. In practice, many users intentionally omit the date from the source because they explicitly want it to be generated.

- Michael(tm) Smith: l10n.xml

further change needed for switch from no locale to nb.

- Michael(tm) Smith: common.xml

Added support for orgname in authorgroup. Thanks to Camille Bégnis.

- Michael(tm) Smith: Makefile

"no" locale is now "nb"

- Mauritz Jeanson: stripns.xml

Removed the template matching "ng:link|db:link" (in order to make @xlink:show work with <link> elements). As far as I can tell, this template is no longer needed.

- Mauritz Jeanson: entities.ent

Moved declaration of comment.block.parents entity to common/entities.ent.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xml

Added an update the fix made in revision 7528 (handling of xref/link in no.anchor.mode ↔ mode).

Having xref in title is not a problem as long as the target is not an ancestor element. Closes bug #1838136.

Note that an xref that is in a title and whose target is an ancestor element is still not rendered in the TOC. This could be considered a bug, but on the other hand I cannot really see the point in having such an xref in a document.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xml

Added a "not(ancestor::title)" test to work around "too many nested apply-templates" problems when processing xrefs or links in no.anchor.mode mode. Hopefully, this closes bug #1811721.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xml

Removed old template matching "link" in no.anchor.mode mode.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xml

Process <link> in no.anchor.mode mode with the same template as <xref>. Closes bug #1759205 (Empty link in no.anchor.mode mode).

- Mauritz Jeanson: titles.xml

In no.anchor.mode mode, do not output anchors for elements that are descendants of <title>. Previously, having inline elements with @id/@xml:id in <title>s resulted in anchors both in the TOC and in the main flow. Closes bug #1797492.

11.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`

Updated documentation for `keep-together`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `task.xml`

Enabled use of the `keep-together` PI on `task` elements.

- Robert Stayton: `index.xml`

FOP1 requires `fo:wrapper` for inline index entries, not `fo:inline`.

- Robert Stayton: `index.xml`

Fixed non-working `inline.or.block` template for `indexterm` wrappers.
Add `fop1` to list of processors using `inline.or.block`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.xml`

Fixed bug #1891965 (`colsep` in `entytbl` not working).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Added support for `title` in `revhistory`. Closes bug #1842847.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`

Small doc cleanup (`dbfo float-type`).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Insert commas between multiple copyright holders.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `autotoc.xml`; `division.xml`

Added modifications to support nested set elements. See bug #1853172.

- David Cramer: `glossary.xml`

Added `normalize-space` to `xsl:sort`s to avoid misordering of `glossterms` due to stray leading spaces.

- David Cramer: `glossary.xml`

Fixed bug #1854199: `glossary.xml` should use the `sortas` attribute on `glossentry`

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xml`

Added a template for `citebiblioid`. The hyperlink target is the parent of the referenced `biblioid`, and the "hot text" is the `biblioid` itself enclosed in brackets.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xml`

Moved declaration of `comment.block.parents` entity to `common/entities.ent`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: docbook.xsl

Updated message about unmatched element.

- Mauritz Jeanson: param.xweb

Added link to profiling chapter of TCG.

- Mauritz Jeanson: refentry.xsl

Fixed typo (refsynopsysdiv -> refsynopsisdiv).

- David Cramer: fop.xsl; fop1.xsl; ptc.xsl; xep.xsl

Added test to check generate.index param when generating pdf bookmarks

- Mauritz Jeanson: graphics.xsl

Added support for MathML in imagedata.

- Michael(tm) Smith: math.xsl

Removed unnecessary extra test condition in test express that checks for passivetex.

- Michael(tm) Smith: math.xsl

Don't use fo:instream-foreign-object if we are processing with passivetex. Closes #1806899. Thanks to Justus Piater.

- Mauritz Jeanson: component.xsl

Added code to output a TOC for an appendix in an article when generate.toc='article/appendix toc'. Closes bug #1669658.

- Dongsheng Song: biblio-iso690.xsl

Change encoding from "windows-1250" to "UTF-8".

- Mauritz Jeanson: pi.xsl

Updated documentation for dbfo_label-width.

- Mauritz Jeanson: lists.xsl

Added support for the dbfo_label-width PI in calloutlists.

- Robert Stayton: biblio.xsl

Support finding glossary database entries inside bibliodivs.

- Robert Stayton: formal.xsl

Complete support for <?dbfo pgwide="1"?> for informal elements too.

- Mauritz Jeanson: table.xsl

In the `table.block` template, added a check for the `dbfo_keep-together` PI, so that a table may break (depending on the PI value) at a page break. This was needed since the outer `fo:block` that surrounds `fo:table` has `keep-together.within-column="always"` by default, which prevents the table from breaking. Closes bug #1740964 (Titled `table does not respect dbfo PI`).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xsl`

Added a few missing `@role="tcg"`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Use `normalize-space()` in `glossterm` comparisons (as in `html/inline.xsl`).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `autoidx.xsl`

Removed the `[&scope;]` predicate from the target variable in the template with name="reference".

This filter was the cause of missing index backlinks when `@zone` and `@type` were used on `indexterms`, with `index.on.type=1`. Closes bug #1680836.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `inline.xsl`; `xref.xsl`; `footnote.xsl`

Added capability in FO output for displaying URLs for all hyperlinks (elements marked up with `xlink:href` attributes) in the same way as URLs for `ulinks` are already handled (which is to say, either inline or as numbered footnotes).

Background on this change:

DocBook 5 allows "ubiquitous" linking, which means you can make any element a hyperlink just by adding an `xlink:href` attribute to it, with the value set to an external URL. That's in contrast to DocBook 4, which only allows you to use specific elements (e.g., the `link` and `ulink` elements) to mark up hyperlinks.

The existing FO stylesheets have a mechanism for handling display of URLs for hyperlinks that are marked up with `ulink`, but they did not handle display of URLs for elements that were marked up with `xlink:href` attributes. This change adds handling for those other elements, enabling the URLs they link to be displayed either inline or as numbered footnotes (depending on what values the user has the `ulink.show` and `ulink.footnotes` params set to).

Note that this change only adds URL display support for elements that call the `simple.xlink` template -- which currently is most (but not all) inline elements.

This change also moves the URL display handling out of the `ulink` template and into a new `"hyperlink.url.display"` named template; the `ulink` template and the `simple.xlink` named template now both call the `hyperlink.url.display` template.

Warning: In the stylesheet code that determines what footnote number to assign to each footnote or external hyperlink, there is an XPath expression for determining whether a particular `xlink:href` instance is an external hyperlink; that expression is necessarily a bit complicated and further testing may reveal that it doesn't handle all cases as expected -- so some refinements to it may need to be done later.

Closes #1785519. Thanks to Ken Morse for reporting and troubleshooting the problem.

11.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `inline.xml; synop.xml`

Work to make HTML and XHTML targets more valid

- Keith Fahlgren: `table.xml`

Add better handling for tables that have footnotes in the titles

- Keith Fahlgren: `biblio.xml`

Add anchors to bibliodivs

- Keith Fahlgren: `formal.xml; Makefile; htmltbl.xml`

Initial checkin/merge of epub target from work provided by Paul Norton of Adobe and Keith Fahlgren of O'Reilly.

This change includes new code for generating the XHTML 1.1 target sanely.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `biblio.xml`

Added code for creating URLs from biblioids with `@class="doi"` (representing Digital Object Identifiers). See FR #1934434 and <http://doi.org>.

To do: 1) Add support for FO output. 2) Figure out how `@class="doi"` should be handled for `bibliorelation`, `bibliosource` and `citebiblioid`.

- Norman Walsh: `formal.xml`

Don't use `xsl:copy` because it forces the resulting element to be in the same namespace as the source element; in the XHTML stylesheets, that's wrong. But the HTML-to-XHTML converter does the right thing with literal result elements, so use one of them.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`

Added checks and hacks to various makefiles to enable building under Cygwin. This stuff is ugly and maybe not worth the mess and trouble, but does seem to work as expected and not break anything else.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `docbook.xml`

added "exslt" namespace binding to `html/docbook.xml` file (in addition to existing "exsl" binding. reason is because lack of it seems to cause processing problems when using the profiled version of the stylesheet

- Norman Walsh: `chunk-common.xml`

Rename link

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.xsl`

Added a fix to make `rowsep` apply to the last row of `thead` in `entrytbl`.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `synop.xsl`

Simplified and streamlined handling of output for ANSI-style `funcprototype` output, to correct a problem that was causing type data to be lost in the output parameter definitions. For example, for an instance like this:

```
<paramdef>void *<parameter>dataptr</parameter>[]</paramdef>
... the brackets (indicating an array type) were being dropped.
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `synop.xsl`

Changed HTML handling of K&R-style `paramdef` output. The parameter definitions are no longer output in a table (though the prototype still is). The reason for the change is that the `kr-tabular-funcsynopsis-mode` template was causing type data to be lost in the output parameter definitions. For example, for an instance like this:

```
<paramdef>void *<parameter>dataptr</parameter>[]</paramdef>
... the brackets (indicating an array type) were being dropped.
The easiest way to deal with the problem is to not try to chop up
the parameter definitions and display them in table format, but to
instead just output them as-is. May not look quite as pretty, but
at least we can be sure no information is being lost...
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `pi.xsl`

updated wording of doc for `funcsynopsis-style` PI

- Michael(tm) Smith: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`; `synop.xsl`

Removed the `funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold` param. It's no longer being used in the code and hasn't been since mid 2006.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xsl`

Added support for the `img.src.path` parameter for SVG graphics. Closes bug #1888169.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `chunk-common.xsl`

Added missing space.

- Norman Walsh: `component.xsl`

Fix bug where component titles inside `info` elements were not handled properly

- Michael(tm) Smith: `pi.xsl`

Moved `dbhtml_stop-chunking` embedded doc into alphabetical order, fixed text of TCG section it `see-also`'ed.

- David Cramer: `pi.xsl`

Added support for `<?dbhtml stop-chunking?>` processing instruction

- David Cramer: `chunk-common.xsl`; `pi.xsl`

Added support for `<?dbhtml stop-chunking?>` processing instruction

- David Cramer: `glossary.xsl`

Fixed bug #1854199: `glossary.xsl` should use the `sortas` attribute on `glossentry`. Also added `↔` `normalize-space` to avoid missorting due to stray leading spaces.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Added a template for `citebiblioid`. The hyperlink target is the parent of the referenced `↔` `biblioid`, and the "hot text" is the `biblioid` itself enclosed in brackets.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Added support for `@xlink:show` in the `simple.xlink` template. The "new" and "replace" values are supported (corresponding to values of `"_blank"` and `"_top"` for the `ulink.target` parameter). I have assumed that `@xlink:show` should override `ulink.target` for external URI links. This closes bugs #1762023 and #1727498.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Moved declaration of `comment.block.parents` entity to `common/entities.ent`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `param.xweb`

Added link to profiling chapter of TCG.

- Dongsheng Song: `biblio-iso690.xsl`

Change encoding from "windows-1250" to "UTF-8".

- Robert Stayton: `biblio.xsl`

Add support in `biblio` collection to entries in `bibliodivs`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xsl`

Added missing `@role="tcg"`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `chunk-common.xsl`; `titlepage.xsl`

Refactored `legalnotice/revhistory` chunking, so that the `use.id.as.filename` parameter as well as the `dbhtml_filename` PI are taken into account. A new named template in `titlepage.xsl` is used to compute the filename.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `chunk-common.xsl`; `titlepage.xsl`

An update to the fix for bug #1790495 (r7433):
The "ln-" prefix is output only when the `legalnotice` doesn't have an `@id/@xml:id`, in which case the stylesheets generate an ID value, resulting in a filename like `"ln-7e0fwgj.html"`. This is useful because without the prefix, you wouldn't know that the file contained a `legalnotice`. The same logic is also applied to `revhistory`, using an "rh-" prefix.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `autoidx.xsl`

Removed the [&scope;] predicate from the target variable in the template with name=" ←
reference".
This filter was the cause of missing index backlinks when @zone and @type were used on ←
indexterms,
with index.on.type=1. Closes bug #1680836.

- Mauritz Jeanson: titlepage.xml

Added 'ln-' prefix to the name of the legalnotice chunk, in order to match the
<link href"...> that is output by make.legalnotice.head.links (chunk-common.xml).
Modified the href attribute on the legalnotice link.
Closes bug #1790495.

11.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xml

slightly adjusted spacing around admonition markers

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xml; utility.xml

make sure refsect3 titles are preceded by a line of space, and
make the indenting of their child content less severe

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xml

only indent verbatim environments in TTY output, not in non-TTY/PS

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xml

made another adjustment to correct vertical alignment of admonition marker

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xml; other.xml

Adjusted/corrected alignment of admonition marker in PS/non-TTY output.

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xml

For PS/non-TTY output, display footnote/endnote numbers in
superscript.

- Michael(tm) Smith: table.xml; synop.xml; utility.xml

Changed handling of hanging indents for cmdsynopsis, funcsynopsis,
and synopfragment such that they now look correct in non-TTY/PS
output. We now use the groff \w escape to hang by the actual width
-- in the current font -- of the command, funcdef, or
synopfragment references number (as opposed to hanging by the
number of characters). This rendering in TTY output remains the
same, since the width in monospaced TTY output is the same as the
number of characters.

Also, created new synopsis-block-start and synopsis-block-end
templates to use for cmdsynopsis and funcsynopsis instead of the
corresponding verbatim-* templates.

Along with those changes, also corrected a problem that caused the content of synopfragment to be dropped, and made a vertical-spacing change to adjust spacing around table titles and among sibling synopfragment instances.

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xml

use common l10.language.name template to retrieve English-language name

- Michael(tm) Smith: synop.xml; inline.xml

added comment in code explaining why we don't put filename output in italic (despite the fact that man guidelines say we should)

- Michael(tm) Smith: inline.xml

put filename output in monospace instead of italic

- Michael(tm) Smith: synop.xml

put cmdsynopsis in monospace

- Michael(tm) Smith: inline.xml

removed template match for literal. template matches for monospace inlines are all imported from the HTML stylesheet

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xml

don't indent verbatim environments that are descendants of refsynopsisdiv, not put backgrounds behind them

- Michael(tm) Smith: inline.xml

set output of the literal element in monospace. this causes all inline monospace instances in the git man pages to be set in monospace (since DocBook XML source for git docs is generated with asciidoc and asciidoc consistently outputs only <literal> for inline monospace (not <command> or <code> or anything else). Of course this only affects non-TTY output...

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xml

Added inline.monoseq named template.

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xml

don't bother using a custom register to store the previous font-family value when setting blocks of text in code font; just use \F[] .fam with no arg to switch back

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xml

put links in blue in PS output (note that this matches how groff renders content marked up with the .URL macro)

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xml; param.xweb; param.ent

removed man.links.are.underlined and added man.font.links. Also, changed the default font formatting for links to bold.

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xsl; param.xweb; param.ent

Added new param `man.base.url.for.relative.links` .. specifies a base URL for relative links (for `ulink`, `@xlink:href`, `imagedata`, `audiodata`, `videodata`) shown in the generated NOTES section of man-page output. The value of `man.base.url.for.relative.links` is prepended to any relative URI that is a value of `ulink url`, `xlink:href`, or `fileref` attribute.

If you use relative URIs in link sources in your DocBook refentry source, and you leave `man.base.url.for.relative.links` unset, the relative links will appear "as is" in the NOTES section of any man-page output generated from your source. That's probably not what you want, because such relative links are only usable in the context of HTML output. So, to make the links meaningful and usable in the context of man-page output, set a value for `man.base.url.for.relative.links` that points to the online version of HTML output generated from your DocBook refentry source. For example:

```
<xsl:param name="man.base.url.for.relative.links">
  >http://www.kernel.org/pub/software/scm/git/docs/</xsl:param>
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl

If a source refentry contains a Documentation or DOCUMENTATION section, don't report it as having missing AUTHOR information. Also, if missing a `contrib/personblurb` for a person or org, report pointers to `http://docbook.sf.net/el/personblurb` and to `http://docbook.sf.net/el/contrib`

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl

If we encounter an `author|editor|othercredit` instance that lacks a `personblurb` or `contrib`, report it to the user (because that means we have no information about that `author|editor|othercredit` to display in the generated AUTHOR|AUTHORS section...)

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl; docbook.xsl; other.xsl

if we can't find any usable author data, emit a warning and insert a fixme in the output

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl

fixed bug in indenting of output for `contrib` instances in AUTHORS section. Thanks to Daniel Leidert and the fglrx docs for exposing the bug.

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

for a `para` or `simpara` that is the first child of a callout, suppress the `.sp` or `.PP` that would normally be output (because in those cases, the output goes into a table cell, and the `.sp` or `.PP` markup causes a spurious linebreak before it when displayed

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Added support for rendering `co` callouts and `calloutlist` instances. So you can now use simple callouts -- marking up `programlisting` and such with `co` instances -- and have the callouts displayed in

man-page output. ("simple callouts" means using co@id and callout@arearefs pointing to co@id instances; in man/roff output, we can't/don't support markup that uses areaset and area)

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

only put a line of space after a verbatim if it's followed by a text node or a paragraph

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xsl

put verbatim environments in slightly smaller font in non-TTY output

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

minor whitespace-only reformatting of lists.xsl source

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Made refinements/fixes to output of orderedlist and itemizedlist -- in part, to get mysql man pages to display correctly. This change causes a "\c" continuation marker to be added between listitem markers and contents (to ensure that the content remains on the same line as the marker when displayed)

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

put a line of vertical space after all verbatim output that has sibling content following it (not just if that sibling content is a text node)

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

refined spacing around titles for admonitions

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl; other.xsl

Deal with case of verbatim environments that have a linebreak after the opening tag. Assumption is that users generally don't want that linebreak to appear in output, so we do some groff hackery to mess with vertical spacing and close the space.

- Michael(tm) Smith: inline.xsl

indexterm instances now produce groff comments like this:

```
.\ " primary: secondary: tertiary
```

remark instances, if non-empty, now produce groff comments

- Michael(tm) Smith: charmap.groff.xsl; other.xsl

convert no-break space character to groff "\&" (instead of just "\ "). the reason is that if a space occurs at the end of a line, our processing causes it to be eaten. a real-world case of this is the mysql(1) man page. appending the "\&" prevents that

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

output "sp" before simpara output, not after it (outputting it after results in undesirable whitespace in particular cases; for example, in the hg/mercurial docs

- Michael(tm) Smith: table.xsl; synop.xsl; utility.xsl

renamed from title-preamble to pinch.together and replaced "sp -1" between synopsis fragments with call to pinch.together instead

- Michael(tm) Smith: table.xsl

use title-preamble template for table titles (instead of "sp -1" hack), and "sp 1" after all tables (instead of just "sp"

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xsl

created title-preamble template for suppressing line spacing after headings

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl

further refinement of indenting in AUTHORS section

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl; other.xsl

refined handling of admonitions

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Use RS/RE in another place where we had IP ""

- Michael(tm) Smith: info.xsl

Replace (ab)use of IP with "sp -1" in AUTHORS section with RS/RE instead.

- Michael(tm) Smith: table.xsl; synop.xsl; info.xsl

changed all instances of ".sp -1n" to ".sp -1"

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xsl

add extra line before SH heads only in non-TTY output

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

Reworked output for admonitions (caution, important, note, tip, warning). In TTY output, admonitions now get indented. In non-TTY output, a colored marker (yellow) is displayed next to them.

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xsl

Added BM/EM macros for putting a colored marker in margin next to a block of text.

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xsl
-

created `make.bold.title` template by moving title-bolding part out from `nested-section-title` template. This allows the bolding to also be used by the template for formatting admonitions

- Michael(tm) Smith: `info.xml`

put `.br` before copyright contents to prevent them from getting run in

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.xml`; `other.xml`; `utility.xml`

made point size of output for `Refsect2` and `Refsect3` heads bigger

- Michael(tm) Smith: `other.xml`

put slightly more space between SH head and underline in non-TTY output

- Michael(tm) Smith: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`; `other.xml`

Added the `man.charmap.subset.profile.english` parameter and refined the handling of charmap subsets to differentiate between English and non-English source.

This way charmap subsets are now handled is this:

If the value of the `man.charmap.use.subset` parameter is non-zero, and your DocBook source is not written in English (that is, if its `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute has a value other than `en`), then the character-map subset specified by the `man.charmap.subset.profile` parameter is used instead of the full roff character map.

Otherwise, if the `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute on the root element in your DocBook source or on the first `refentry` element in your source has the value `en` or if it has no `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute, then the character-map subset specified by the `man.charmap.subset.profile.english` parameter is used instead of `man.charmap.subset.profile`.

The difference between the two subsets is that `man.charmap.subset.profile` provides mappings for characters in Western European languages that are not part of the Roman (English) alphabet (ASCII character set).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `other.xml`

Various updates, mainly related to uppercasing SH titles:

- added a "Language: " metadata line to the top comment area of output man pages, to indicate the language the page is in
- added a "toupper" macro of doing locale-aware uppercasing of SH titles and cross-references to SH titles; the mechanism relies on the `uppercase.alpha` and `lowercase.alpha` DocBook gentext keys to do locale-aware uppercasing based on the language the page is written in
- added a "string.shuffle" template, which provides a library function for "shuffling" two strings together into a single string; it takes the first character for the first string, the first character from second string, etc. The only current use

for it is to generate the argument for the groff tr request that does string uppercasing.

- added `make.tr.uppercase.arg` and `make.tr.normalcase.arg` named templates for use in generating groff code for uppercasing and "normal"-casing SH titles
- made the BB/BE "background drawing" macros have effect only in non-TTY output
- output a few comments in the top part of source

- Michael(tm) Smith: `utility.xml`

removed some leftover kruft

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.xml`

To create the name(s) for each man page, we now replace any spaces in the `refname(s)` with underscores. This ensures that tools like `lexgrog(1)` will be able to parse the name (`lexgrog` won't parse names that contain spaces).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `docbook.xml`

Put a comment into source of man page to indicate where the main content starts. (We now have a few of macro definitions at the start of the source, so putting this comment in helps those that might be viewing the source.)

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.xml`

refined mechanism for generating SH titles

- Michael(tm) Smith: `charmap.groff.xml`

Added `zcaron`, `Zcaron`, `scaron`, and `Scaron` to the groff character map. This means that generated Finnish man pages will no longer contain any raw accented characters -- they'll instead be marked up with groff escapes.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `other.xml`; `utility.xml`

corrected a regression I introduced about a year ago that caused dots to be output just as `"\."` -- instead needs to be `"\&."` (which is what it will be now, after this change)

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.xml`

Changed backend handling for generating titles for SH sections and for cross-references to those sections. This should have no effect on TTY output (behavior should remain the same hopefully) but results in titles in normal case (instead of uppercase) in PS output.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `info.xml`

use `make.subheading` template to make subheadings for AUTHORS and COPYRIGHT sections (instead of hardcoding roff markup)

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

put code font around programlisting etc.

- Michael(tm) Smith: synop.xsl; docbook.xsl

embed custom macro definitions in man pages, plus wrap synopsis in code font

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xsl

use the make.subheading template to generated SH subheading for endnotes section.

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Added some templates for generating if-then-else conditional markup in groff, so let's use those instead of hard-coding it in multiple places...

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xsl; utility.xsl

Initial checkin of some changes related to making PS/PDF output from "man -l -Tps" look better. The current changes:

- render synopsis and verbatim sections in a monospace/code font
- put a light-grey background behind all programlisting, screen, and literallayout instances
- prevent SH heads in PS output from being rendered in uppercase (as they are in console output)
- also display xrefs to SH heads in PS output in normal case (instead of uppercase)
- draw a line under SH heads in PS output

The changes made to the code to support the above features were:

- added some embedded/custom macros: one for conditionally upper-casing SH x-refs, one for redefining the SH macro itself, with some conditional handling for PS output, and finally a macro for putting a background/screen (filled box) around a block of text (e.g., a program listing) in PS output
- added utility templates for wrapping blocks of text in code font; also templates for inline code font

- Robert Stayton: refentry.xsl

refpurpose nodes now get apply-templates instead of just normalize-space().

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Fixed alignment of first lined of text for each listitem in orderedlist output for TTY. Existing code seemed to have been causing an extra undesirable space to appear.

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Wrapped some roff conditionals around roff markup for orderedlist and itemizedlist output, so that the lists look acceptable in PS output as well as TTY.

- Michael(tm) Smith: pi.xml; synop.xml; param.xweb; param.ent

Added the man.funcsynopsis.style parameter. Has the same effect in manpages output as the funcsynopsis.style parameter has in HTML output -- except that its default value is 'ansi' instead of 'kr'.

- Michael(tm) Smith: synop.xml

Reworked handling of K&R funcprototype output. It no longer relies on the HTML kr-tabular templates, but instead just does direct transformation to roff. For K&R output, it displays the paramdef output in an indented list following the prototype.

- Michael(tm) Smith: synop.xml

Properly integrated handling for K&R output into manpages stylesheet. The choice between K&R output and ANSI output is currently controlled through use of the (HTML) funcsynopsis.style parameter. Note that because the mechanism does currently rely on funcsynopsis.style, the default in manpages output is now K&R (because that's the default of that param). But I suppose I ought to create a man.funcsynopsis.style and make the default for that ANSI (to preserve the existing default behavior).

- Michael(tm) Smith: docbook.xml

added manpages/pi.xml file

- Michael(tm) Smith: .cvsignore; pi.xml

Added "dbman funcsynopsis-style" PI and incorporated it into the doc build.

- Michael(tm) Smith: refentry.xml

Fixed regression that caused an unescaped dash to be output between refname and refpurpose content. Closes bug #1894244. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.

- Michael(tm) Smith: other.xml

Fixed problem with dots being escaped in filenames of generated man files. Closes #1827195. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.

- Michael(tm) Smith: inline.xml

Added support for processing structfield (was appearing in roff output surrounded by HTML tags; fixed so that it gets roff ital markup). Closes bug #1858329. Thanks to Sam Varshavchik.

11.6 Epub

The following changes have been made to the epub code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/README; bin/spec/epub_realbook_spec.rb

'Realbook' spec now passes

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub; README; bin/spec/README; bin/lib/docbook.rb; bin/spec/epub_r...

Very primitive Windows support for dbtoepub reference implementation; README for running ↵
tests and for the .epub target in general; shorter realbook test document (still fails ↵
for now)

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/dbtoepub; bin/spec/epub_regressions_spec.rb; bin/lib/docbook.rb; bin/s...

Changes to OPF spine to not duplicate idrefs for documents with parts not at the root; ↵
regression specs for same

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl

Fixing linking to cover @id, distinct from other needs of cover-image-id (again, thanks to ↵
Martin Goerner)

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl

Updating the title of the toc element in the guide to be more explicit (thanks to Martin ↵
Goerner)

- Keith Fahlgren: bin/spec/examples/amasque_exploded/content.opf; bin/spec/examples/amasque_...

Initial checkin/merge of epub target from work provided by Paul Norton of Adobe
and Keith Fahlgren of O'Reilly.

- Keith Fahlgren: docbook.xsl

== General epub test support

\$ spec -O ~/.spec.opts spec/epub_spec.rb

DocBook::Epub

- should be able to be created
- should fail on a nonexistent file
- should be able to render to a file
- should create a file after rendering
- should have the correct mimetype after rendering
- should be valid .epub after rendering an article
- should be valid .epub after rendering an article without sections
- should be valid .epub after rendering a book
- should be valid .epub after rendering a book even if it has one graphic
- should be valid .epub after rendering a book even if it has many graphics
- should be valid .epub after rendering a book even if it has many duplicated graphics
- should report an empty file as invalid
- should confirm that a valid .epub file is valid
- should not include PDFs in rendered epub files as valid image inclusions
- should include a TOC link in rendered epub files for <book>s

Finished in 20.608395 seconds

15 examples, 0 failures

```
== Verbose epub test coverage against _all_ of the testdocs

Fails on only (errors truncated):
1)
'DocBook::Epub should be able to render a valid .epub for the test document /Users/keith/ ↵
work/docbook-dev/trunk/xsl/epub/bin/spec/testdocs/calloutlist.003.xml [30]' FAILED
'DocBook::Epub should be able to render a valid .epub for the test document /Users/keith/ ↵
work/docbook-dev/trunk/xsl/epub/bin/spec/testdocs/cmdsynopsis.001.xml [35]' FAILED
....

Finished in 629.89194 seconds

224 examples, 15 failures

224 examples, 15 failures yields 6% failure rate
```

11.7 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the `htmlhelp` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `htmlhelp-common.xsl`

```
Added <xsl:with-param name="quiet" select="$chunk.quietly"/> to calls to
the write.chunk, write.chunk.with.doctype, and write.text.chunk templates.
This makes chunk.quietly=1 suppress chunk filename messages also for help
support files (which seems to be what one would expect). See bug #1648360.
```

11.8 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the `eclipse` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- David Cramer: `eclipse.xsl`

```
Use sortas attributes (if they exist) when sorting indexterms
```

- David Cramer: `eclipse.xsl`

```
Added support for indexterm/see in eclipse index.xml
```

- Mauritz Jeanson: `eclipse.xsl`

```
Added <xsl:with-param name="quiet" select="$chunk.quietly"/>
to helpidx template.
```

- David Cramer: `eclipse.xsl`

```
Generate index.xml file and add related goo to plugin.xml file. Does not yet support see ↵
and seealso.
```

- Mauritz Jeanson: `eclipse.xsl`

```
Added <xsl:with-param name="quiet" select="$chunk.quietly"/> to calls to
the write.chunk, write.chunk.with.doctype, and write.text.chunk templates.
This makes chunk.quietly=1 suppress chunk filename messages also for help
support files (which seems to be what one would expect). See bug #1648360.
```

11.9 JavaHelp

The following changes have been made to the javahelp code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: javahelp.xsl

Added `<xsl:with-param name="quiet" select="$chunk.quietly"/>` to calls to the `write.chunk`, `write.chunk.with.doctype`, and `write.text.chunk` templates. This makes `chunk.quietly=1` suppress chunk filename messages also for help support files (which seems to be what one would expect). See bug #1648360.

11.10 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the roundtrip code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl

fix table/cell borders for wordml, fix formal figure, add emphasis-strong

- Mauritz Jeanson: supported.xml

Changed @cols to 5.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; blocks2dbk.dtd; template.xml

added pubdate, fixed metadata handling in biblioentry

- Steve Ball: supported.xml

Added support for edition.

- Steve Ball: docbook-pages.xsl; wordml-blocks.xsl; docbook.xsl; wordml.xsl; pages-normalise...

Removed stylesheets for old, deprecated conversion method.

- Steve Ball: specifications.xml; dbk2ooo.xsl; blocks2dbk.xsl; dbk2pages.xsl; blocks2dbk.dtd...

Added support for Open Office, added edition element, improved list and table support in ↔
Word and Pages

- Steve Ball: normalise-common.xsl; blocks2dbk.xsl; dbk2pages.xsl; template-pages.xml; templ...

Fixed bug in WordML table handling, improved table handling for Pages 08, synchronised ↔
WordML and Pages templates.

- Steve Ball: normalise-common.xsl; blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl; dbk2wp.xsl

fix caption, attributes

- Steve Ball: specifications.xml; blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl; blocks2dbk.dtd; temp...

Fixes to table and list handling

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl

added support for explicit emphasis character styles

- Steve Ball: `wordml2normalise.xml`

added support for customisation in image handling

- Steve Ball: `blocks2dbk.xml`

Added `inlinemediaobject` support for metadata.

- Steve Ball: `normalise-common.xml`; `blocks2dbk.xml`; `template.xml`; `dbk2wordml.xml`; `dbk2wp.xml`

Added support file. Added style locking. Conversion bug fixes.

11.11 Slides

The following changes have been made to the `slides` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `fo/Makefile`; `html/Makefile`

Added checks and hacks to various makefiles to enable building under Cygwin. This stuff is ugly and maybe not worth the mess and trouble, but does seem to work as expected and not break anything else.

- Jirka Kosek: `html/plain.xml`

Added support for showing foil number

11.12 Website

The following changes have been made to the `website` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `extensions/saxon64/.classes/.gitignore`; `extensions/xalan2/.classes/com/...`

renamed a bunch more `.cvsignore` files to `.gitignore` (to facilitate use of `git-svn`)

11.13 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `epub.autolabel.xml`

New parameter for epub, `epub.autolabel`

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.frame.border.color.xml`; `table.cell.padding.xml`; `table.cell.border.t...`

Added missing `refpurposes` and descriptions.

- Keith Fahlgren: `ade.extensions.xml`

Extensions to support Adobe Digital Editions extensions in .epub output.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `fop.extensions.xml`; `fop1.extensions.xml`

Clarified that `fop1.extensions` is for FOP 0.90 and later. Version 1 is not here yet...

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.links.are.underlined.xml`; `man.endnotes.list.enabled.xml`; `man.font.l...`
removed `man.links.are.underlined` and added `man.font.links`. Also, changed the default font formatting for links to bold.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.base.url.for.relative.links.xml`

Added new param `man.base.url.for.relative.links` .. specifies a base URL for relative links (for `ulink`, `@xlink:href`, `imagedata`, `audiodata`, `videodata`) shown in the generated NOTES section of man-page output. The value of `man.base.url.for.relative.links` is prepended to any relative URI that is a value of `ulink url`, `xlink:href`, or `fileref` attribute.

If you use relative URIs in link sources in your DocBook refentry source, and you leave `man.base.url.for.relative.links` unset, the relative links will appear "as is" in the NOTES section of any man-page output generated from your source. That's probably not what you want, because such relative links are only usable in the context of HTML output. So, to make the links meaningful and usable in the context of man-page output, set a value for `man.base.url.for.relative.links` that points to the online version of HTML output generated from your DocBook refentry source. For example:

```
<xsl:param name="man.base.url.for.relative.links"
>http://www.kernel.org/pub/software/scm/git/docs/</xsl:param>
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.string.subst.map.xml`

squeeze `.sp\n.sp` into a single `.sp` (to prevent a extra, spurious line of whitespace from being inserted after programlisting etc. in certain cases)

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.manual.fallback.profile.xml`; `refentry.source.fallback.profile...`

don't use `refmiscinfo@class=date` value as fallback for refentry "source" or "manual" metadata fields

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.charmap.subset.profile.xml`; `man.charmap.enabled.xml`; `man.charmap.su...`

made some further doc tweaks related to the `man.charmap.subset.profile.english` param

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.charmap.subset.profile.xml`; `man.charmap.enabled.xml`; `man.charmap.su...`

Added the `man.charmap.subset.profile.english` parameter and refined the handling of charmap subsets to differentiate between English and non-English source.

This way charmap subsets are now handled is this:

If the value of the `man.charmap.use.subset` parameter is non-zero, and your DocBook source is not written in English (that is, if its `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute has a value other than `en`), then the character-map subset specified by the `man.charmap.subset.profile` parameter is used instead of the full roff character map.

Otherwise, if the `lang` or `xml:lang` attribute on the root element in your DocBook source or on the first refentry element in your source has the value `en` or if it has no `lang` or `xml:lang`

attribute, then the character-map subset specified by the `man.charmap.subset.profile.english` parameter is used instead of `man.charmap.subset.profile`.

The difference between the two subsets is that `man.charmap.subset.profile` provides mappings for characters in Western European languages that are not part of the Roman (English) alphabet (ASCII character set).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.charmap.subset.profile.xml`

Added to default charmap used by manpages:

- the "letters" part of the 'C1 Controls And Latin-1 Supplement (Latin-1 Supplement)' Unicode block
- Latin Extended-A block (but not all of the characters from that block have mappings in groff, so some of them are still passed through as-is)

The effects of this change are that in man pages generated for most Western European languages and for Finnish, all characters not part of the Roman alphabet are (e.g., "accented" characters) are converted to groff escapes.

Previously, by default we passed through those characters as is (and users needed to use the full charmap if they wanted to have those characters converted).

As a result of this change, man pages generated for Western European languages will be viewable in some environments in which they are not viewable if the "raw" non-Roman characters are in them.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `generate.legalnotice.link.xml`; `generate.revhistory.link.xml`

Added information on how the filename is computed.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `default.table.width.xml`

Clarified PI usage.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.funcsynopsis.style.xml`

Added the `man.funcsynopsis.style` parameter. Has the same effect in manpages output as the `funcsynopsis.style` parameter has in HTML output -- except that its default value is 'ansi' instead of 'kr'.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold.xml`

Removed the `funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold` param. It's no longer being used in the code and hasn't been since mid 2006.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.properties.xml`

Set `keep-together.within-column` to "auto". This seems to be the most sensible default value for tables.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `informal.object.properties.xml`; `admon.graphics.extension.xml`; `informalequ...`

Several small documentation fixes.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `manifest.in.base.dir.xml`
Wording fixes.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `header.content.properties.xml`; `footer.content.properties.xml`
Added `refpurpose`.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `ulink.footnotes.xml`; `ulink.show.xml`
Updated for DocBook 5.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `index.method.xml`; `glossterm.auto.link.xml`
Spelling and wording fixes.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `callout.graphics.extension.xml`
Clarified available graphics formats and extensions.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `footnote.sep.leader.properties.xml`
Corrected `refpurpose`.
- Jirka Kosek: `footnote.properties.xml`
Added more properties which make it possible to render correctly footnotes placed inside `↔` verbatim elements.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `img.src.path.xml`
`img.src.path` works with `inlinegraphic` too.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `saxon.character.representation.xml`
Added TCG link.
- Mauritz Jeanson: `img.src.path.xml`
Updated description of `img.src.path`. Bug #1785224 revealed that there was a risk of misunderstanding how it works.

11.14 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `xsl2profile.xsl`
Added new rules to profile all content generated by HTML Help (including alias files)
- Robert Stayton: `profile-mode.xsl`
use `mode="profile"` instead of `xsl:copy-of` for attributes so they can be more easily customized.

11.15 Tools

The following changes have been made to the `tools` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `make/Makefile.DocBook`

various changes and additions to support making with `asciidoc` as an input format

- Michael(tm) Smith: `make/Makefile.DocBook`

make `dblatex` the default PDF maker for the example makefile

- Michael(tm) Smith: `xsl/build/html2roff.xsl`

Reworked handling of K&R `funcprototype` output. It no longer relies on the HTML `kr-tabular` templates, but instead just does direct transformation to `roff`. For K&R output, it displays the `paramdef` output in an indented list following the prototype.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `xsl/build/make-xsl-params.xsl`

Made `attribute-sets` members of the `param` list. This enables links to `attribute-sets` in the reference documentation.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `xsl/build/html2roff.xsl`

use `.BI` handling in K&R `funsynopsis` output for manpages, just as we do already of ANSI output

- Michael(tm) Smith: `xsl/build/html2roff.xsl`

Implemented initial support for handling tabular K&R output of `funcprototype` in manpages output. Accomplished by adding more templates to the intermediate HTML-to-`roff` stylesheet that the build uses to create the `manpages/html-synop.xsl` stylesheet.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `xsl/build/doc-link-docbook.xsl`

Made the `xsl/tools/xsl/build/doc-link-docbook.xsl` stylesheet import `profile-docbook.xsl`, so that we can do profiling of release notes. Corrected some problems in the target for the `release-notes` HTML build.

11.16 Extensions

The following changes have been made to the `extensions` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Keith Fahlgren: `Makefile`

Use `DOCBOOK_SVN` variable everywhere, please; build with `PDF_MAKER`

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`

moved `extensions` build targets from master `xsl/Makefile` to `xsl/extensions/Makefile`

- Michael(tm) Smith: `.cvsignore`

re-adding empty `extensions` subdir

11.17 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-saxon` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `VERSION`

```
bring xsl2, xsl-saxon, and xsl-xalan VERSION files up-to-date with
recent change to snapshot build infrastructure
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `nbproject/build-impl.xml`; `nbproject/project.properties`

```
Changed hard-coded file references in "clean" target to variable
references. Closes #1792043. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `VERSION`; `Makefile`

```
Did post-release wrap-up of xsl-saxon and xsl-xalan dirs
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `nbproject/build-impl.xml`; `VERSION`; `Makefile`; `test`

```
More tweaks to get release-ready
```

11.18 XSL-Xalan

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-xalan` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `VERSION`

```
bring xsl2, xsl-saxon, and xsl-xalan VERSION files up-to-date with
recent change to snapshot build infrastructure
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `nbproject/build-impl.xml`

```
Changed hard-coded file references in "clean" target to variable
references. Closes #1792043. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`; `VERSION`

```
Did post-release wrap-up of xsl-saxon and xsl-xalan dirs
```

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`; `nbproject/build-impl.xml`; `VERSION`

```
More tweaks to get release-ready
```

11.19 XSL-libxslt

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-libxslt` code since the 1.73.2 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `python/xslt.py`

```
Print the result to stdout if no outfile has been given.
Some unnecessary semicolons removed.
```

- Mauritz Jeanson: `python/xslt.py`

Added a function that quotes parameter values (to ensure that they are interpreted as strings).
Replaced deprecated functions from the string module with string methods.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `python/README`; `python/README.LIBXSLT`

renamed `xsl-libxslt/python/README` to `xsl-libxslt/python/README.LIBXSLT`

- Mauritz Jeanson: `python/README`

Tweaked the text a little.

12 Release Notes: 1.73.2

This is solely a minor bug-fix update to the 1.73.1 release. It fixes a packaging error in the 1.73.1 package, as well as a bug in footnote handling in FO output.

13 Release: 1.73.1

This is mostly a bug-fix update to the 1.73.0 release.

13.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `locale/de.xml`

Applied patch #1766009.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/lv.xml`

Added localization for `ProductionSet`.

13.2 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `table.xsl`

Modified the `tgroup` template so that, for tables with multiple `tgroups`, a `width` attribute is output on all corresponding `fo:tables`. Previously, there was a test prohibiting this (and a comment saying that outputting more than one `width` attribute will cause an error). But this seems to be no longer relevant; it is not a problem with FOP 0.93 or XEP 4.10. Closes bug #1760559.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xsl`

Replaced useless `<a>` elements with warning messages (`textinsert` extension).

- Mauritz Jeanson: `admon.xsl`

Enabled generation of `ids` (on `fo:wrapper`) for `indexterms` in admonition titles, so that page references in the index can be created. Closes bug #1775086.

13.3 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Added `<xsl:call-template name="process.footnotes"/>` to abstract template so that footnotes in `info/abstract` are processed. Closes bug #1760907.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `pi.xml`; `synop.xml`

Changed handling of HTML output for the `cmdsynopsis` and `funcsynopsis` elements, such that `a@id` instances are generated for them if they are descendants of any element containing a `dbcmdlist` or `dbfunclist` PI. Also, update the embedded reference docs for the `dbcmdlist` and `dbfunclist` PIs to make it clear that they can be used within any element for which `cmdsynopsis` or `funcsynopsis` are valid children.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `formal.xml`

Reverted the part of revision 6952 that caused `a@id` anchors to be generated for output of informal objects. Thanks to Sam Steingold for reporting.

- Robert Stayton: `glossary.xml`

Account for a glossary with no `glossdiv` or `glossentry` children.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `titlepage.xml`

Modified `legalnotice` template so that the `base.name` parameter is calculated in the same way as for `revhistory` chunks. Using `<xsl:apply-templates mode="chunk-filename" select="."/>` did not work for single-page output since the template with that mode is in `chunk-code.xml`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `graphics.xml`

Updated support for SVG (must be a child of `imagedata` in DB 5). Added support for MathML in `imagedata`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`

Added documentation for the `dbh` PI (used for context-sensitive HTML Help). (The two templates matching `'dbh'` are still in `htmlhelp-common.xml`).

13.4 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the `manpages` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `endnotes.xml`

In `manpages` output, generate warnings about `notesources` with `non-para` children only if the `notesource` is a footnote or annotation. Thanks to Sam Steingold for reporting problems with the existing handling.

13.5 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the `htmlhelp` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `htmlhelp-common.xml`

Added single-pass namespace-stripping support to the `htmlhelp`, `eclipse`, and `javahelp` stylesheets.

13.6 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the `eclipse` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `eclipse.xml`

Added single-pass namespace-stripping support to the `htmlhelp`, `eclipse`, and `javahelp` stylesheets.

13.7 JavaHelp

The following changes have been made to the `javahelp` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `javahelp.xml`

Added single-pass namespace-stripping support to the `htmlhelp`, `eclipse`, and `javahelp` stylesheets.

13.8 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the `roundtrip` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Steve Ball: `blocks2dbk.xml`; `blocks2dbk.dtd`; `pages2normalise.xml`

Modularised `blocks2dbk` to allow customisation,
Added support for tables to `pages2normalise`

13.9 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.73.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: `procedure.properties.xml`

`procedure` was inheriting `keep-together` from `formal.object.properties`, but
a `procedure` does not need to be kept together by default.

- Dave Pawson: `title.font.family.xml`; `component.label.includes.part.label.xml`; `table.frame.b...`

Regular formatting re-org.

14 Release: 1.73.0

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

New localizations and localization updates

We added two new localizations: Latvian and Esperanto, and made updates to the Czech, Chinese Simplified, Mongolian, Serbian, Italian, and Ukrainian localizations.

ISO690 citation style for bibliography output.

Set the *bibliography.style* parameter to `iso690` to use ISO690 style.

New documentation for processing instructions (PI)

The reference documentation that ships with the release now includes [documentation on all PIs](#) that you can use to control output from the stylesheets.

New profiling parameters for audience and wordsize

You can now do profiling based on the values of the `audience` and `wordsize` attributes.

Changes to man-page output

The manpages stylesheet now supports single-pass profiling and single-pass DocBook 5 namespace stripping (just as the HTML and FO stylesheets also do). Also, added handling for `mediaobject` & `inlinemediaobject`. (Each `imagedata`, `audiodata`, or `videodata` element within a `mediaobject` or `inline mediaobject` is now treated as a "note-source" and so handled in much the same way as links and `annotation/alt/footnote` are in manpages output.) And added the `man.authors.section.enabled` and `man.copyright.section.enabled` parameters to enable control over whether output includes auto-generated AUTHORS and COPYRIGHT sections.

Highlighting support for C

The highlighting mechanism for generating syntax-highlighted code snippets in output now supports C code listings (along with Java, PHP, XSLT, and others).

Experimental docbook-xsl-update script

We added an experimental `docbook-xsl-update` script, the purpose of which is to facilitate easy sync-up to the latest docbook-xsl snapshot (by means of `rsync`).

14.1 Gentext

The following changes have been made to the `gentext` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/lv.xml`; Makefile

Added Latvian localization file, from Girts Ziemelis.

- Dongsheng Song: `locale/zh_cn.xml`

Brought up to date with `en.xml` in terms of items. A few strings marked for translation.

- Jirka Kosek: `locale/cs.xml`

Added missing translations

- Robert Stayton: `locale/eo.xml`

New locale for Esperanto.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/mn.xml`

Update from Ganbold Tsagaankhuu.

- Jirka Kosek: `locale/en.xml`; `locale/cs.xml`

Rules for normalizing glossary entries before they are sorted can be now different for ↔ each language.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `locale/sr_Latn.xml`; `locale/sr.xml`

Committed changes from Miloš Komarčević to Serbian files.

- Robert Stayton: `locale/ja.xml`

Fix chapter in context `xref-number-and-title`

- Robert Stayton: `locale/it.xml`

Improved version from contributor.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `locale/uk.xml`

Applied patch 1592083.

14.2 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `labels.xml`

Changed handling of reference auto-labeling such that reference (when it appears at the component level) is now affected by the `label.from.part` param, just as preface, chapter, and appendix.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `common.xml`

Added support to the HTML stylesheets for proper processing of `orgname` as a child of `author`.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `refentry.xml`

Refined logging output of `refentry` metadata-gathering template; for some cases of "missing" elements (`refmiscinfo` stuff, etc.), the log messages now include URL to corresponding page in the Definitive Guide (TDG).

- Robert Stayton: `titles.xml`

Add `refsection/info/title` support.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `titles.xml`

Added support for correct handling of `xref` to elements that contain `info/title` descendants but no title children.

This should be further refined so that it handles any `*info` elements. And there are probably some other places where similar handling for `*info/title` should be added.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `pi.xml`

Modified `<xsl:when>` in `datetime.format` template to work around Xalan bug.

14.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: `component.xml`

Add parameters to the `page.sequence` utility template.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `xref.xml`

Added template for `xref` to `area/areaset`.
Part of fix for bug #1675513 (`xref` to `area` broken).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `inline.xml`

Added template match for `person` element to `fo` stylesheet.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xml`

Added support for `spacing="compact"` in `variablelist`, per bug report #1722540.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xml`

`table pgwide="1"` should also use `pgwide.properties` attribute-set.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xml`

Make citations numbered if `bibliography.numbered != 0`.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add new profiling parameters for audience and wordsize.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Added `callout.icon.size` parameter.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xml`; `xref.xml`

Add support for `xlink` as `olink`.

- Robert Stayton: `autotoc.xml`; `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add support for `qanda.in.toc` to `fo` TOC.

- Robert Stayton: `component.xml`

Improved the `page.sequence` utility template for use with `book`.

- Robert Stayton: `division.xml`

Refactored the big `book` template into smaller pieces.
Used the `"page.sequence"` utility template in
`component.xml` to shorten the `toc` piece.
Added placeholder templates for `front.cover` and `back.cover`.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`; `sections.xml`

Add `section.container.element` parameter to enable
pgwide spans inside sections.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent; component.xml`

Add `component.titlepage.properties` attribute-set to
support `span="all"` and other properties.

- Robert Stayton: `htmltbl.xml; table.xml`

Apply `table.row.properties` template to html `tr` rows too.
Add `keep-with-next` to `table.row.properties` when row is in thead.

- Robert Stayton: `table.xml`

Add support for `default.table.frame` parameter.
Fix bug 1575446 rowsep last check for `@morerows`.

- Robert Stayton: `refentry.xml`

Add support for `info/title` in `refsections`.

- David Cramer: `qandaset.xml`

Make `fo` questions and answers behave the same way as `html`

- Jirka Kosek: `lists.xml`

Added missing attribute set for `procedure`

- Jirka Kosek: `param.xweb; biblio.xml; docbook.xml; param.ent; biblio-iso690.xml`

Added support for formatting `biblioentries` according to ISO690 citation style.
New bibliography style can be turned on by setting parameter `bibliography.style` to `"iso690 ↵`
"
The code was provided by Jana Dvorakova

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb; param.ent; pagesetup.xml`

Add `header.table.properties` and `footer.table.properties` attribute-sets.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xml`

Add `fop1.extensions` for `menuchoice` arrow handling exception.

14.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `param.xweb; param.ent`

Moved declaration and documentation of `javahelp.encoding` from `javahelp.xml` to the
regular "parameter machinery".

- Michael(tm) Smith: `admon.xml`

Changed handling of titles for note, warning, caution, important, tip admonitions: We now output an HTML h3 head only if admon.textlabel is non-zero or if the admonition actually contains a title; otherwise, we don't output an h3 head at all. (Previously, we were outputting an empty h3 if the admon.textlabel was zero and if the admonition had no title.)

- Mauritz Jeanson: xref.xsl

Added template for xref to area/areaset.
Part of fix for bug #1675513 (xref to area broken).

- Mauritz Jeanson: titlepage.xsl; component.xsl; division.xsl; sections.xsl

Added fixes to avoid duplicate ids when generate.id.attributes = 1.
This (hopefully) closes bug #1671052.

- Michael(tm) Smith: formal.xsl; pi.xsl

Made the dbfunclist PI work as intended. Also added doc for dbfunclist and dbcmdlist PIs.

- Michael(tm) Smith: pi.xsl; synop.xsl

Made the dbcmdlist work the way it appears to have been intended to work. Restored dbhtml-dir template back to pi.xsl.

- Michael(tm) Smith: titlepage.xsl; param.xweb; param.ent

Added new param abstract.notitle.enabled.
If non-zero, in output of the abstract element on titlepages, display of the abstract title is suppressed.
Because sometimes you really don't want or need that title there...

- Michael(tm) Smith: chunk-code.xsl; graphics.xsl

When we are chunking long descriptions for mediaobject instances into separate HTML output files, and use.id.as.filename is non-zero, if a mediaobject has an ID, use that ID as the basename for the long-description file (otherwise, we generate an ID for it and use that ID as the basename for the file).
This parallels the recent change made to cause IDs for legalnotice instances to be used as basenames for legalnotice chunks.
Also, made some minor refinements to the recent changes for legalnotice chunk handling.

- Michael(tm) Smith: titlepage.xsl

Added support to the HTML stylesheets for proper processing of orgname as a child of author.

- Michael(tm) Smith: chunk-code.xsl

When \$generate.legalnotice.link is non-zero and \$use.id.as.filename is also non-zero, if a legalnotice has an ID, then instead of assigning the "ln-<generatedID>" basename to the output file for that legalnotice, just use its real ID as the basename for the file -- as we do when chunking other elements that have IDs.

- David Cramer: `xref.xsl`

Handle alt text on xrefs to steps when the step doesn't have a title.

- David Cramer: `lists.xsl`

Added `<p>` element around term in `variablelist` when formatted as table to avoid misalignment of term and `listitem` in `xhtml` (non-quirks mode) output

- David Cramer: `qandaset.xsl`

Added `<p>` element around question and answer labels to avoid misalignment of label and `listitem` in `xhtml` (non-quirks mode) output

- David Cramer: `lists.xsl`

Added `<p>` element around callouts to avoid misalignment of callout and `listitem` in `xhtml` (non-quirks mode) output

- Mauritz Jeanson: `inline.xsl`

Make citations numbered if `bibliography.numbered != 0`.

- Robert Stayton: `param.xweb`; `param.ent`

Add support for new profiling attributes `audience` and `wordsize`.

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`; `xref.xsl`

Add support for `xlink` olinks.

- Jirka Kosek: `glossary.xsl`

Rules for normalizing glossary entries before they are sorted can be now different for each language.

- Robert Stayton: `chunk-common.xsl`; `chunk-code.xsl`; `manifest.xsl`; `chunk.xsl`

Refactored the chunking modules to move all named templates to `chunk-common.xsl` and all match templates to `chunk-code.xsl`, in order to enable better chunk customization.
See the comments in `chunk.xsl` for more details.

- Robert Stayton: `lists.xsl`

Add anchor for `xml:id` for `listitem` in `varlistentry`.

- Robert Stayton: `refentry.xsl`

Add support for `info/title` in `refsections` for `db5`.

- Jirka Kosek: `param.xweb`; `biblio.xsl`; `docbook.xsl`; `param.ent`; `biblio-iso690.xsl`

Added support for formatting `biblioentries` according to ISO690 citation style.
New bibliography style can be turned on by setting parameter `bibliography.style` to `"iso690"`
The code was provided by Jana Dvorakova

- Robert Stayton: `inline.xsl`; `xref.xsl`

Add call to `class.attribute` to `<a>` output elements so they can have a class value too.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `glossary.xsl`

Fixed bug #1644881:
* Added curly braces around all `$language` attribute values.
* Moved declaration of language variable to top level of stylesheet.
Tested with Xalan, Saxon, and xsltproc.

14.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `param.xweb`; `docbook.xsl`; `param.ent`

Added the `man.authors.section.enabled` and `man.copyright.section.enabled` parameters. Set those to zero when you want to suppress display of the auto-generated AUTHORS and COPYRIGHT sections. Closes request #1467806. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `docbook.xsl`

Took the test that the manpages stylesheet does to see if there are any Refentry children in current doc, and made it namespace-agnostic. Reason for that is because the test otherwise won't work when it is copied over into the generated `profile-docbook.xsl` stylesheet.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile`

Added a `manpages/profile-docbook.xsl` file to enable single-pass profiling for manpages output.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `info.xsl`

Output copyright and legalnotice in man-page output in whatever place they are in in document order. Closes #1690539. Thanks to Daniel Leidert for reporting.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `docbook.xsl`

Restored support for single-pass namespace stripping to manpages stylesheet.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `synop.xsl`; `block.xsl`; `info.xsl`; `inline.xsl`; `lists.xsl`; `endnotes.xsl`; `ut...`

Changed handling of bold and italic/underline output in manpages output. Should be transparent to users, but...

This touches handling of all bold and italic/underline output. The exact change is that the `mode="bold"` and `mode="italic"` utility templates were changed to named templates. (I think maybe I've changed it back and forth from mode to named before, so this is maybe re-reverting it yet again).

Anyway, the reason for the change is that the templates are

sometimes call on dynamically node-sets, and using modes to format those doesn't allow passing info about the current/real context node from the source (not the node-set created by the stylesheet) to that formatting stage.

The named templates allow the context to be passed in as a parameter, so that the bold/ital formatting template can use context-aware condition checking.

This was basically necessary in order to suppress bold formatting in titles, which otherwise gets screwed up because of the numbnut way that roff handles nested bold/ital.

Closes #1674534). Much thanks to Daniel Leidert, whose in his docbook-xsl bug-finding kung-fu has achieved Grand Master status.

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl

Fixed handling of example instances by adding the example element to the same template we use for processing figure. Closes #1674538. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xsl

Don't include lang in manpages filename/pathname if lang=en (that is, only generate lang-qualified file-/pathnames for non-English).

- Michael(tm) Smith: endnotes.xsl

In manpages output, emit warnings for notesources (footnote, etc.) that have something other than para as a child.

The numbered-with-hanging-indent formatting that's used for rendering endnotes in the NOTES section of man pages places some limits/assumptions on how the DocBook source is marked up; namely, for notesources (footnote, annotation, etc.) that can contain block-level children, if they have a block-level child such as a table or itemizedlist or orderedlist that is the first child of a footnote, we have no way of rendering/indenting its content properly in the endnotes list.

Thus, the manpages stylesheet not emits a warning message for that case, and suggests the "fix" (which is to wrap the table or itemizedlist or whatever in a para that has some preferatory text.

- Michael(tm) Smith: utility.xsl

Added support to mixed-block template for handling tables in mixed-blocks (e.g., as child of para) correctly.

- Michael(tm) Smith: table.xsl; synop.xsl; block.xsl; info.xsl; lists.xsl; refentry.xsl; end...

Reverted necessary escaping of backslash, dot, and dash out of the well-intentioned (but it now appears, misguided) "marker" mechanism (introduced in the 1.72.0 release) -- which made use of alternative "marker" characters as internal representations of those characters, and then replaced them just prior to serialization -- and back into what's basically the system that was used prior to the 1.69.0 release; that is, into a part of stylesheet code that gets executed

at the beginning of processing -- before any other roff markup up is. This change obviates the need for the marker system. It also requires a lot less RAM during processing (for large files, the marker mechanism ending up requiring gigabytes of memory).

Closes bug #1661177. Thanks to Scott Smedley for providing a test case (the fvwm man page) that exposed the problem with the marker mechanism.

Also moved the mechanism for converting non-breaking spaces back into the same area of the stylesheet code.

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Fixed problem with incorrect formatting of nested variablelist. Closes bug #1650931. Thanks to Daniel "Eagle Eye" Leidert.

- Michael(tm) Smith: lists.xsl

Make sure that all listitems in itemizedlist and orderedlist are preceded by a blank line. This fixes a regression that occurred when instances of the TP macro that were use in a previous versions of the list-handling code were switched to RS/RE (because TP doesn't support nesting). TP automatically generates a blank line, but RS doesn't. So I added a .sp before each .RS

- Michael(tm) Smith: block.xsl; inline.xsl; param.xweb; docbook.xsl; links.xsl; param.ent

Made a number of changes related to elements with out-of-line content:

- Added handling for mediaobject & inlinemediaobject. Each imagedata, audiodata, or videodata element within a mediaobject or inline mediaobject is now treated as a "notesource" and so handled in much the same way as links and annotation/alt/footnotes.

That means a numbered marker is generated inline to mark the place in the main flow where the imagedata, audiodata, or videodata element occurs, and a corresponding numbered endnote for it is generated in the endnotes list at the end of the man page; the endnote contains the URL from the fileref attribute of the imagedata, audiodata, or videodata element.

For mediobject and inlinemediaobject instances that have a textobject child, the textobject is displayed within the main text flow.

- Renamed several man.link.* params to man.endnotes.*, to reflect that fact that the endnotes list now contains more than just links. Also did similar renaming for a number of stylesheet-internal vars.
- Added support for xlink:href (along with existing support for the legacy ulink element).
- Cleaned up and streamlined the endnotes-handling code. It's still messy and klunky and the basic mechanism it uses is very inefficent for documents

that contain a lot of notesources, but at least it's a bit better than it was.

14.6 Eclipse

The following changes have been made to the eclipse code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: Makefile

Fixed bug #1715093: Makefile for creating profiled version of eclipse.xsl added.

- David Cramer: eclipse.xsl

Added normalize-space around to avoid leading whitespace from appearing in the output if there's extra leading whitespace (e.g. <title> Foo</title>) in the source ↔

14.7 JavaHelp

The following changes have been made to the javahelp code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: javahelp.xsl

Implemented FR #1230233 (sorted index in javahelp).

- Mauritz Jeanson: javahelp.xsl

Added normalize-space() around titles and index entries to work around whitespace problems ↔
Added support for glossary and bibliography in toc and map files.

14.8 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the roundtrip code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Steve Ball: blocks2dbk.xsl; wordml2normalise.xsl; normalise2sections.xsl; sections2blocks....
new stylesheets for better word processor support and easier maintenance

- Steve Ball: template-pages.xml; dbk2wp.xsl; sections-spec.xml

fixed bugs

14.9 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: htmlhelp.button.back.xml; htmlhelp.button.forward.xml; htmlhelp.button.zo...
Modified refpurpose text.

- Mauritz Jeanson: htmlhelp.map.file.xml; htmlhelp.force.map.and.alias.xml; htmlhelp.alias.f...
Fixed typos, made some small changes.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `javahelp.encoding.xml`

Moved declaration and documentation of `javahelp.encoding` from `javahelp.xml` to the regular "parameter machinery".

- Mauritz Jeanson: `generate.id.attributes.xml`

Added `refpurpose` text.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `annotation.js.xml`; `annotation.graphic.open.xml`; `annotation.graphic.close...`

Added better `refpurpose` texts.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `chunker.output.cdata-section-elements.xml`; `chunker.output.standalone.xml...`

Fixed some broken formatting in source files for `chunker.*` params, as pointed out by Dave Pawson.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `label.from.part.xml`

Changed handling of reference auto-labeling such that reference (when it appears at the component level) is now affected by the `label.from.part` param, just as `preface`, `chapter`, and `appendix`.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `callout.graphics.extension.xml`

Clarified that 'extension' refers to file names.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `abstract.notitle.enabled.xml`

Added new param `abstract.notitle.enabled`.
If non-zero, in output of the `abstract` element on titlepages, display of the abstract title is suppressed.
Because sometimes you really don't want or need that title there...

- Michael(tm) Smith: `man.string.subst.map.xml`

Updated manpages string-substitute map to reflect fact that because of another recent change to suppress bold markup in `.SH` output, we no longer need to add a workaround for the accidental uppercasing of roff escapes that occurred previously.

- Jirka Kosek: `margin.note.float.type.xml`; `title.font.family.xml`; `table.frame.border.color.x...`

Improved parameter metadata

- Robert Stayton: `profile.wordsize.xml`; `profile.audience.xml`

Add support for profiling on new attributes `audience` and `wordsize`.

- Robert Stayton: `callout.graphics.number.limit.xml`; `callout.graphics.extension.xml`

Added SVG graphics for fo output.

- Robert Stayton: `callout.icon.size.xml`

Set size of callout graphics.

- Jirka Kosek: `default.units.xml`; `chunker.output.method.xml`; `toc.list.type.xml`; `output.inden...`
Updated parameter metadata to the new format.
- Jirka Kosek: `man.output.quietly.xml`; `title.font.family.xml`; `footnote.sep.leader.properties...`
Added type annotations into parameter definition files.
- Robert Stayton: `section.container.element.xml`
Support spans in sections for certain processors.
- Robert Stayton: `component.titlepage.properties.xml`
Empty attribute set for top level component titlepage block.
Allows setting a span on title info.
- Jirka Kosek: `bibliography.style.xml`
Added link to WiKi page with description of special markup needed for ISO690 biblioentries
- Robert Stayton: `make.year.ranges.xml`
Clarify that multiple year elements are required.
- Robert Stayton: `id.warnings.xml`
Turn off id.warnings by default.
- Jirka Kosek: `bibliography.style.xml`
Added support for formatting biblioentries according to ISO690 citation style.
New bibliography style can be turned on by setting parameter `bibliography.style` to `"iso690 ←`
`"`
The code was provided by Jana Dvorakova
- Robert Stayton: `header.table.properties.xml`; `footer.table.properties.xml`
Support adding table properties to header and footer tables.

14.10 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Jirka Kosek: `c-hl.xml`; `xslthl-config.xml`
Added support for C language. Provided by Bruno Guegan.

14.11 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Robert Stayton: `profile-mode.xsl`
Add support for new profiling attributes `audience` and `wordsize`.

14.12 Lib

The following changes have been made to the `lib` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `lib.xweb`

Changed name of `prepend-pad` template to `pad-string` and tweaked so it can do both right/left padding.

14.13 Tools

The following changes have been made to the `tools` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `bin; bin/docbook-xsl-update`

Did some cleanup to the `install.sh` source and added a `docbook-xsl-update` script to the `docbook-xsl` distro, the purpose of which is to facilitate easy sync-up to the latest `docbook-xsl` snapshot (by means of `rsync`).

14.14 XSL-Saxon

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-saxon` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Verbatim.java; xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/...`

Added modifications so that the new `callout.icon.size` parameter is taken into account. ↔
This parameter is used for FO output (where SVG now is the default graphics format for callouts ↔).
) .

- Mauritz Jeanson: `saxon65/src/com/nwalsh/saxon/FormatCallout.java; xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/x...`

Added code for generating id attributes on callouts in HTML and FO output. These patches enable cross-references to callouts placed by area coordinates. It works for graphic, unicode and text callouts. Part of fix for bug #1675513 (xref to area broken).

- Michael(tm) Smith: `saxon65/src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Website.java; xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan...`

Copied over Website XSL Java extensions.

14.15 XSL-Xalan

The following changes have been made to the `xsl-xalan` code since the 1.72.0 release.

- Michael(tm) Smith: `Makefile; xalan2`

Turned off `xalan2.jar` build. This removes DocBook XSL Java extensions support for versions of Xalan prior to Xalan 2.7. If you are currently using the extensions with an earlier version of Xalan, you need to upgrade to Xalan 2.7.

- Mauritz Jeanson: `xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Verbatim.java`; `xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/...`
Added modifications so that the new `callout.icon.size` parameter is taken into account. ↔
This parameter is used for FO output (where SVG now is the default graphics format for callouts ↔).
) .
- Mauritz Jeanson: `saxon65/src/com/nwalsh/saxon/FormatCallout.java`; `xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/x...`
Added code for generating id attributes on callouts in HTML and FO output.
These patches enable cross-references to callouts placed by area coordinates.
It works for graphic, unicode and text callouts.
Part of fix for bug #1675513 (xref to area broken).
- Michael(tm) Smith: `saxon65/src/com/nwalsh/saxon/Website.java`; `xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan...`
Copied over Website XSL Java extensions.

15 Release: 1.72.0

This release includes important bug fixes and adds the following significant feature changes:

Automatic sorting of glossary entries

The HTML and FO stylesheets now support automatic sorting of `glossary` entries. To enable glossary sorting, set the value of the `glossary.sort` parameter to 1 (by default, it's value is 0). When you enable glossary sorting, `glossentry` elements within a `glossary`, `glossdiv`, or `glosslist` are sorted on the `glossterm`, using the current language setting. If you don't enable glossary sorting, then the order of `glossentry` elements is left "as is" — that is, they are not sorted but are instead just displayed in document order.

WordML renamed to Roundtrip, OpenOffice support added

Stylesheets for "roundtrip" conversion between documents in OpenOffice format (ODF) and DocBook XML have been added to the set of stylesheets that formerly had the collective title *WordML*, and that set of stylesheets has been renamed to *Roundtrip* to better reflect the actual scope and purpose of its contents.

So the DocBook XSL Stylesheets now support roundtrip conversion (with certain limitations) of WordML, OpenOffice, and Apple Pages documents to and from DocBook XML.

Including QandASet questions in TOCs

The HTML stylesheet now provides support for including `QandASet` questions in the document TOC. To enable display of questions in the document TOC, set the value of the `qanda.in.toc` to 1 (by default, it's 0). When you enable `qanda.in.toc`, then the generated table of contents for a document will include `qandaset` titles, `qandadiv` titles, and `question` elements. The default value of zero excludes them from the TOC.

Note

The `qanda.in.toc` parameter does not affect any tables of contents that may be generated *within* a `qandaset` or `qandadiv` (only in the document TOC).

Language identifier in man-page filenames and pathnames

Added new parameter `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled`, which controls whether a language identifier is included in man-page filenames and pathnames. It works like this:

If the value of `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled` is non-zero, man-page files are output with a language identifier included in their filenames or pathnames as follows:

- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is non-zero, each file is output to, e.g., a `/ $lang / man8 / foo . 8` pathname
- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is zero, each file is output with a `foo . $lang . 8` filename

***index.page.number.properties* property set**

For FO output, use the *index.page.number.properties* to control formatting of page numbers in *index* output — to (for example) to display page numbers in *index* output in a different color (to indicate that they are links).

Crop marks in output from Antenna House XSL Formatter

Support has been added for generating crop marks in print/PDF output generated using Antenna House XSL Formatter

More string-substitution hooks in manpages output

The *man.string.subst.map.local.pre* and *man.string.subst.map.local.post* parameters have been added to enable easier control over custom string substitutions.

Moved verbatim properties to attribute-set

The hardcoded properties used in verbatim elements (*literallayout*, *programlisting*, *screen*) were moved to the *verbatim.properties* attribute-set so they can be more easily customized.

enhanced simple.xlink template

Now the *simple.xlink* template in *inline.xsl* works with cross reference elements *xref* and *link* as well. Also, more elements call *simple.xlink*, which enables DB5 xlink functionality.

DocBook 5 compatibility

Stylesheets now consistently support DocBook 5 attributes (such as *xml:id*). Also, DocBook 5 *info* elements are now checked along with other **info* elements, and the use of *name()* function was replaced by *local-name()* so it also matches on DocBook 5 elements. These changes enable reusing the stylesheets with DocBook 5 documents with minimal fixup.

HTML class attributes now handled in class.attribute mode

The HTML class attributes were formerly hardcoded to the element name. Now the class attribute is generated by applying templates in *class.attribute* mode so class attribute names can be customized. The default is still the element name.

arabic-indic numbering enabled in autolabels

Numbering of chapter, sections, and pages can now use arabic-indic numbering when number format is set to 'arabicindic' or to ١.

The following is a detailed list of changes (not including bug fixes) that have been made since the 1.71.1 release.

15.1 Common

The following changes have been made to the *common* code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Add support for arabicindic numbering to *autolabel.format* template.
- Finish support for *@xml:id* everywhere *@id* is used.
- replace *name()* with *local-name()* in most cases.
- Add support for *info*.
- Add utility template *tabstyle* to return the *tabstyle* from any table element.

15.2 FO

The following changes have been made to the *fo* code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Add support for sorting glossary entries
 - Add *table.row.properties* template to customize table rows.
 - Moved all properties to attribute-sets so can be customized more easily.
 - Add *index.page.number.properties* attribute-set to format page numbers.
-

- xref now supports xlink:href, using simple.xlink template.
- Rewrote simple.xlink, and call it with all charseq templates.
- Add simple.xlink processing to term and member elements.
- Add support for crop marks in Antenna House.

15.3 HTML

The following changes have been made to the html code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Add support for sorting glossary entries
- Add support for qanda.in.toc to add qandaentry questions to document TOC.
- add simple.xlink support to variablelist term and simplelist member.
- *.propagates.style now handled in class.attribute mode.
- add class parameter to class.attribute mode to set default class.
- Convert all class attributes to use the class.attribute mode so class names can be customized more easily.
- Add class.attribute mode to generate class attributes.
- Added simple.xlink to most remaining inlines.
Changed class attributes to applying class.attributes mode.
- Changed xref template to use simple.xlink tempalte.
- Improve generate.html.title to work with link targets too.
- Improved simple.xlink to support link and xref.
- Use new link.title.attribute now.
- Rewrote simple.xlink to handle linkend also.
Better computation of title attribute on link too.
- Handle Xalan quirk as special case.
- Add support for info.
- Fixed imagemaps so they work properly going from calspair coords to HTML area coords.

15.4 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added doc for man.output.lang.in.name.enabled parameter. This checkin completes support for writing file/pathnames for man-pages with \$lang include in the names. Closes #1585967. knightly accolades to Daniel Leidert for providing the feature request.

- Added new param `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled`, which controls whether `$LANG` value is included in manpages filenames and pathnames. It works like this:

If the value of `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled` is non-zero, man-page files are output with the `$lang` value included in their filenames or pathnames as follows;

- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is non-zero, each file is output to, e.g., a `/$lang/man8/foo.8` pathname
- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is zero, each file is output with a `foo.$lang.8` filename
- Use `"\e"` instead of `"\\"` for backslash output, because the groff docs say that's the correct thing to do; also because testing (thanks, Paul Dubois) shows that `"\\"` doesn't always work as expected; for example, `"\\"` within a table seems to mess things up.
- Added the `man.string.subst.map.local.pre` and `man.string.subst.map.local.post` parameters. Those parameters enable local additions and changes to string-substitution mappings without the need to change the value of `man.string.subst.map` parameter (which is for standard system mappings). Closes #1456738. Thanks to Sam Steingold for constructing a true stylesheet torture test (the clisp docs) that exposed the need for these params.
- Added the Markup element to the list of elements that get output in bold. Thanks to Eric S. Raymond.
- Replaced all dots in roff requests with U+2302 ("house" character), and added escaping in output for all instances of dot that are not in roff requests. This fixes the problem case where a string beginning with a dot (for example, the string `".bashrc"`) might occur at the beginning of a line in output, in which case would mistakenly get interpreted as a roff request. Thanks to Eric S. Raymond for pushing to fix this.
- Made change to ensure that list content nested in `itemizedlist` and `orderedlist` instances is properly indented. This is a switch from using `.TP` to format those lists to using `.RS/.RE` to format them instead (because `.TP` does not allow nesting). Closes bug #1602616. Thanks to Daniel Leidert.

15.5 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added doc for `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled` parameter. This checkin completes support for writing file/pathnames for man-pages with `$lang` include in the names. Closes #1585967. knightly accolades to Daniel Leidert for providing the feature request.
- Added new param `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled`, which controls whether `$LANG` value is included in manpages filenames and pathnames. It works like this:

If the value of `man.output.lang.in.name.enabled` is non-zero, man-page files are output with the `$lang` value included in their filenames or pathnames as follows;

- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is non-zero, each file is output to, e.g., a `/$lang/man8/foo.8` pathname
- if `man.output.subdirs.enabled` is zero, each file is output with a `foo.$lang.8` filename
- Added the `man.string.subst.map.local.pre` and `man.string.subst.map.local.post` parameters. Those parameters enable local additions and changes to string-substitution mappings without the need to change the value of `man.string.subst.map` parameter (which is for standard system mappings). Closes #1456738. Thanks to Sam Steingold for constructing a true stylesheet torture test (the clisp docs) that exposed the need for these params.
- Add `index.page.number.properties` by default.
- Added `index.page.number.properties` to allow customizations of page numbers in indexes.
- Move `show-destination="replace"` property from template to attribute-set so it can be customized.
- Add support for sorting glossary entries
- Add option to include qanda in tables of contents.
- Moved all properties to attribute-sets so can be customized more easily.

15.6 Template

The following changes have been made to the `template` code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added workaround for Xalan bug: use `for-each` and `copy` instead of `copy-of` (#1604770).

15.7 Roundtrip

The following changes have been made to the `roundtrip` code since the 1.71.1 release.

- rename to `roundtrip`, add OpenOffice support

16 Release: 1.71.1

This is a minor update to the 1.71.0 release. Along with a number of bug fixes, it includes two feature changes:

- Added support for profiling based on `xml:lang` and status attributes.
- Added initial support in manpages output for `footnote`, `annotation`, and `alt` instances. Basically, they all now get handled the same way `ulink` instances are. They are treated as a class as "note sources": A numbered marker is generated at the place in the main text flow where they occur, then their contents are displayed in an endnotes section at the end of the man page.

16.1 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.71.1 release.

- For backward compatability `autoidx-ng.xml` is invoking "kosek" indexing method again.
- Add support for Xalan generating a root `xml:base` like saxon.

16.2 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.71.1 release.

- For backward compatability `autoidx-ng.xml` is invoking "kosek" indexing method again.
- Add support for Xalan to add root node `xml:base` for db5 docs.
- Added support for profiling based on `xml:lang` and status attributes.

16.3 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.71.1 release.

- For backward compatability `autoidx-ng.xml` is invoking "kosek" indexing method again.
- Add support for Xalan to add root node `xml:base` for db5 docs.
- Added support for profiling based on `xml:lang` and status attributes.
- Made changes in namespace declarations to prevent `xmllint`'s canonicalizer from treating them as relative namespace URIs.
 - Changed `xmlns:k="java:com.isogen.saxon18n.Saxon18nService"` to `xmlns:k="http://www.isogen.com/functions/com.isogen.saxon18n.Saxon18nService"`; Saxon accepts either form (see <http://www.saxonica.com/documentation/extensibility/functions.html>); to Saxon, "the part of the URI before the final `'/'` is immaterial".
 - Changed, e.g. `xmlns:xverb="com.nwalsh.xalan.Verbatim"` to `xmlns:xverb="xalan://com.nwalsh.xalan.Verbatim"`; Xalan accepts either form (see <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/extensions.html#java-namespace-declare>); just as Saxon does, it will "simply use the string to the right of the rightmost forward slash as the Java class name".
 - Changed `xmlns:xalanredirect="org.apache.xalan.xslt.extensions.Redirect"` to `xmlns:redirect="http://xml.apache.org/xalan/redirect"`, and adjusted associated code to make the current Xalan redirect spec. (see <http://xml.apache.org/xalan-j/apidocs/org/apache/xalan/lib/Redirect.html>)
- Added the `html.append` and `chunk.append` parameters. By default, the value of both is empty; but the internal DocBook XSL stylesheets build sets their value to `<xsl:text>
</xsl:text>`, in order to ensure that all files in the `docbook-xsl-doc` package end in a newline character. (Because diff and some other tools may emit error messages and/or not behave as expected when processing files that are not newline-terminated.)

16.4 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added license information

16.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added initial support in manpages output for footnote, annotation, and alt instances. Basically, they all now get handled the same way ulink instances are. They are treated as a class as "note sources": A numbered marker is generated at the place in the main text flow where they occur, then their contents are displayed in an endnotes section at the end of the man page (currently titled REFERENCES, for English output, but will be changed to NOTES).

This support is not yet complete. It works for most "normal" cases, but probably mishandles a good number of cases. More testing will be needed to expose the problems. It may well also introduce some bugs and regressions in other areas, including basic paragraph handling, handling of "mixed block" content, handling of other indented content, and handling of authorblurb and personblurb in the AUTHORS section.

16.6 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added support for profiling based on xml:lang and status attributes.
- Added the html.append and chunk.append parameters. By default, the value of both is empty; but the internal DocBook XSL stylesheets build sets their value to "<xsl:text>
</xsl:text>", in order to ensure that all files in the docbook-xsl-doc package end in a newline character. (Because diff and some other tools may emit error messages and/or not behave as expected when processing files that are not newline-terminated.)

16.7 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the profiling code since the 1.71.1 release.

- Added support for profiling based on xml:lang and status attributes.

17 Release: 1.71.0

This is mainly a bug fix release, but it also includes two significant feature changes:

Highlighting support added

The stylesheets now include support for source-code highlighting in output of programlisting instances (controlled through the *highlight.source* parameter). The Java-based implementation requires Saxon and makes use of [Michal Molhanec's XSLTHL](#). More details are available at Jirka Kosek's website:

<http://xmlguru.cz/2006/07/docbook-syntax-highlighting>

The support is currently limited to highlighting of XML, Java, PHP, Delphi, Modula-2 sources, and INI files.

Changes to autoindexing

The templates that handle alternative indexing methods were reworked to avoid errors produced by certain processors not being able to tolerate the presence of unused functions. With this release, none of the code for the 'kimber' or 'kosek' methods is included in the default stylesheets. In order to use one of those methods, your customization layer must import one of the optional stylesheet modules:

- `html/autoidx-kosek.xsl`
- `html/autoidx-kimber.xsl`
- `fo/autoidx-kosek.xsl`
- `fo/autoidx-kimber.xsl`

See the *index.method* parameter reference page for more information.

Two other changes to note:

- The default indexing method now can handle accented characters in latin-based alphabets, not just English. This means accented latin letters will group and sort with their unaccented counterpart.
- The default value for the *index.method* parameter was changed from 'english' to 'basic' because now the default method can handle latin-based alphabets, not just English.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.70.1 release.

17.1 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Added `reference.autolabel` parameter for controlling labels on reference output.
- Support rows that are **completely** overlapped by the preceding row
- New modules for supporting indexing extensions.
- Support `startinglinenumber` on `orderedlist`

17.2 Extensions

The following changes have been made to the `extensions` code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Completely reworked extensions build system; now uses NetBeans and ant

17.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.70.1 release.

- `xsl:sort lang` attribute now uses two-char substring of `lang` attribute.
- Support titlecase "Java", "Perl", and "IDL" as values for the language attribute on `classsynopsis`, etc. (instead of just lowercase "java", "perl", and "idl"). Also support "c++" and "C++" (instead of just "cpp").

Affects HTML, FO, and manpages output. Closes bug 1552332. Thanks to "Brian A. Vanderburg II".

- Added support for the `reference.autolabel` param in (X)HTML and FO output.
- Support rows that are **completely** overlapped by the preceding row
- Rearranged templates for the 3 indexing methods and changed method named 'english' to 'basic'.
- New modules for supporting indexing extensions.
- Turn off blank-body for `fop1.extensions` too since `fop 0.92` does not support it either.
- Add Xalan variant to test for `exslt:node-set` function. Xalan can use function named `node-set()`, but doesn't recognize it using `function-available()`.
- Added support to FO stylesheets for handling instances of `Org` where it occurs outside of **info* content. In HTML stylesheets, moved handling of `Org` out of `info.xsl` and into `inline.xsl`. In both FO and HTML stylesheets, added support for correctly processing `Affiliation` and `Jobtitle`.
- Don't output punctuation between `Refname` and `Refpurpose` if `Refpurpose` is empty. Also corrected handling of `Refsect2/title` instances, and removed some debugging stuff that was generated in manpages output to mark the ends of sections.
- Added new `email.delimiters.enabled` param. If non-zero (the default), delimiters are generated around e-mail addresses (output of the email element). If zero, the delimiters are suppressed.
- Initial support of syntax highlighting of `programlistings`.
- Chapter after preface should restart numbering of pages.

17.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.70.1 release.

- `xsl:sort lang` attribute now uses two-char substring of `lang` attribute.
- Support titlecase "Java", "Perl", and "IDL" as values for the language attribute on `classsynopsis`, etc. (instead of just lowercase "java", "perl", and "idl"). Also support "c++" and "C++" (instead of just "cpp").

Affects HTML, FO, and manpages output. Closes bug 1552332. Thanks to "Brian A. Vanderburg II".

- Added support for the `reference.autolabel` param in (X)HTML and FO output.
 - Support rows that are **completely** overlapped by the preceding row
 - Rearranged templates for the 3 indexing methods and changed method named 'english' to 'basic'.
 - New modules for supporting indexing extensions.
-

- Added several new HTML parameters for controlling appearance of content on HTML title pages:

`contrib.inline.enabled:`

If non-zero (the default), output of the `contrib` element is displayed as inline content rather than as block content.

`othercredit.like.author.enabled:`

If non-zero, output of the `othercredit` element on titlepages is displayed in the same style as `author` and `editor` output. If zero (the default), `othercredit` output is displayed using a style different than that of `author` and `editor`.

`blurb.on.titlepage.enabled:`

If non-zero, output from `authorblurb` and `personblurb` elements is displayed on title pages. If zero (the default), output from those elements is suppressed on title pages (unless you are using a titlepage customization that causes them to be included).

`editedby.enabled`

If non-zero (the default), a localized `Edited by` heading is displayed above editor names in output of the `editor` element.

- Add Xalan variant to test for `exslt:node-set` function. Xalan can use function named `node-set()`, but doesn't recognize it using `function-available()`.
- Added support to FO stylesheets for handling instances of `Org` where it occurs outside of `*info` content. In HTML stylesheets, moved handling of `Org` out of `info.xsl` and into `inline.xsl`. In both FO and HTML stylesheets, added support for correctly processing `Affiliation` and `Jobtitle`.
- Don't output punctuation between `Refname` and `Refpurpose` if `Refpurpose` is empty. Also corrected handling of `Refsect2/title` instances, and removed some debugging stuff that was generated in `manpages` output to mark the ends of sections.
- Added new `email.delimiters.enabled` param. If non-zero (the default), delimiters are generated around e-mail addresses (output of the `email` element). If zero, the delimiters are suppressed.
- Added `qanda.nested.in.toc` param. Default value is zero. If non-zero, instances of "nested" `Qandaentry` (ones that are children of `Answer` elements) are displayed in the TOC. Closes patch 1509018 (from Daniel Leidert). Currently on affects HTML output (no patch for FO output provided).
- Improved handling of relative locations generated files
- Initial support of syntax highlighting of `programlistings`.
- Support `org`
- Support `person`
- Support `$keep.relative.image.uris` also when chunking

17.5 Highlighting

The following changes have been made to the highlighting code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Initial support of syntax highlighting of program listings.

17.6 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the manpages code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Suppress footnote markers and output warning that footnotes are not yet supported.
- Handle instances of address/otheraddr/ulink in author et al in the same way as email instances; that is, display them on the same link as the author, editor, etc., name.
- Don't number or link-list any Ulink instance whose string value is identical to the value of its url attribute. Just display it inline.
- Don't output punctuation between Refname and Refpurpose if Refpurpose is empty. Also corrected handling of Refsect2/title instances, and removed some debugging stuff that was generated in manpages output to mark the ends of sections.
- Added new email.delimiters.enabled param. If non-zero (the default), delimiters are generated around e-mail addresses (output of the email element). If zero, the delimiters are suppressed.
- In manpages output, if the last/nearest *info element for particular Refentry has multiple Copyright and/or Legalnotice children, process them all (not just the first ones). Closes bug 1524576. Thanks to Sam Steingold for the report and to Daniel Leidert for providing a patch.

17.7 Params

The following changes have been made to the params code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Added reference.autolabel parameter for controlling labels on reference output.
- Added namespace declarations to document elements for all param files.
- Updated index.method doc to describe revised setup for importing index extensions.
- Added several new HTML parameters for controlling appearance of content on HTML title pages:

contrib.inline.enabled:

If non-zero (the default), output of the contrib element is displayed as inline content rather than as block content.

othercredit.like.author.enabled:

If non-zero, output of the othercredit element on titlepages is displayed in the same style as author and editor output. If zero (the default), othercredit output is displayed using a style different than that of author and editor.

`blurb.on.titlepage.enabled:`

If non-zero, output from `authorblurb` and `personblurb` elements is displayed on title pages. If zero (the default), output from those elements is suppressed on title pages (unless you are using a titlepage customization that causes them to be included).

`editedby.enabled`

If non-zero (the default), a localized Edited by heading is displayed above editor names in output of the editor element.

- Added new `email.delimiters.enabled` param. If non-zero (the default), delimiters are generated around e-mail addresses (output of the email element). If zero, the delimiters are suppressed.
- Added `qanda.nested.in.toc` param. Default value is zero. If non-zero, instances of "nested" Qandaentry (ones that are children of Answer elements) are displayed in the TOC. Closes patch 1509018 (from Daniel Leidert). Currently on affects HTML output (no patch for FO output provided).
- Initial support of syntax highlighting of `programlistings`.

17.8 Tools

The following changes have been made to the `tools` code since the 1.70.1 release.

- Ratched down font sizes of headings in example makefile FO output.
- Added param and attribute set to example makefile, for getting wrapping in verbatims in FO output.
- Renamed `Makefile.paramDoc` to `Makefile.docParam`.
- Added `Makefile.paramDoc` file, for creating versions of `param.xml` files with doc embedded.
- Added variable to example makefile for controlling whether HTML or XHTML is generated.

18 Release: 1.70.1

This is a stable release of the 1.70 stylesheets. It includes only a few small changes from 1.70.0.

The following is a list of changes that have been made since the 1.70.0 release.

18.1 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.70.0 release.

- Added three new attribute sets (`revhistory.title.properties`, `revhistory.table.properties` and `revhistory.table.cell.properties`) for controlling appearance of revhistory in FO output.
Modified: `fo/block.xml,1.34`; `fo/param.ent,1.101`; `fo/param.xweb,1.114`; `fo/titlepage.xml,1.41`; `params/revhistory.table.cell.properties.xml,1.1`; `params/revhistory.table.properties.xml,1.1`; `params/revhistory.title.properties.xml,1.1` - Jirka Kosek
- Support DBv5 revisions with full author name (not only authorinitials)
Modified: `fo/block.xml,1.33`; `fo/titlepage.xml,1.40` - Jirka Kosek

18.2 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.70.0 release.

- Support DBv5 revisions with full author name (not only author initials)
Modified: `html/block.xml`, 1.23; `html/titlepage.xml`, 1.34 - Jirka Kosek

18.3 HTMLHelp

The following changes have been made to the `htmlhelp` code since the 1.70.0 release.

- `htmlhelp.generate.index` is now param, not variable. This means that you can override its setting from outside. This is useful when you generate indexterms on the fly (see <http://www.xml.com/pub/a/2004/07/14/dbndx.html?page=3>).
Modified: `htmlhelp/htmlhelp-common.xml`, 1.38 - Jirka Kosek
- Support `chunk.tocs.and.lots` in HTML Help
Modified: `htmlhelp/htmlhelp-common.xml`, 1.37 - Jirka Kosek

18.4 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.70.0 release.

- Added three new attribute sets (`revhistory.title.properties`, `revhistory.table.properties` and `revhistory.table.cell.properties`) for controlling appearance of revhistory in FO output.
Modified: `fo/block.xml`, 1.34; `fo/param.ent`, 1.101; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.114; `fo/titlepage.xml`, 1.41; `params/revhistory.table.cell.properties.xml`, 1.1; `params/revhistory.table.properties.xml`, 1.1; `params/revhistory.title.properties.xml`, 1.1 - Jirka Kosek

19 Release: 1.70.0

As with all DocBook Project **dot-zero** releases, this is an experimental release. It will be followed shortly by a stable release.

This release adds a number of new features, including:

- support for selecting alternative index-collation methods (in particular, support for using a collation library developed by Eliot Kimber)
- improved handling of DocBook 5 document instances (through a namespace-stripping mechanism)
- full support for CALS and HTML tables in manpages output
- a mechanism for preserving relative URIs in documents that make use of XInclude
- support for the "new" .90 version of FOP
- enhanced capabilities for controlling formatting of lists in HTML and FO output
- autogeneration of AUTHOR and COPYRIGHT sections in manpages output
- support for generating crop marks in FO/PDF output
- support for `qandaset` as a root element in FO output
- support for `floatstyle` and `orient` on all table types
- support for `floatstyle` in figure, and example
- `pgwide.properties` attribute-set supports extending figure, example and table into the left indent area instead of spanning multiple columns.

The following is a detailed list of enhancements and API changes that have been made since the 1.69.1 release.

19.1 Common

The following changes have been made to the `common` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Add the `xsl:key` for the kimber indexing method.
Modified: `common/autoidx-ng.xml`, 1.2 - Robert Stayton
 - Add support for `qandaset`.
Modified: `common/labels.xml`, 1.37; `common/subtitles.xml`, 1.7; `common/titles.xml`, 1.35 - Robert Stayton
 - Support `dbhtml/dbfo` start PI for `orderedlist` numbering in both HTML and FO
Modified: `common/common.xml`, 1.61; `html/lists.xml`, 1.50 - Norman Walsh
 - Added CVS header.
Modified: `common/stripns.xml`, 1.12 - Robert Stayton
 - Changed content model of text element to ANY rather than #PCDATA because they could contain markup.
Modified: `common/targetdatabase.dtd`, 1.7 - Robert Stayton
 - Added `refentry.meta.get.quietly` param.
If zero (the default), notes and warnings about "missing" markup are generated during gathering of `refentry` metadata. If non-zero, the metadata is gathered "quietly" -- that is, the notes and warnings are suppressed.
NOTE: If you are processing a large amount of `refentry` content, you may be able to speed up processing significantly by setting a non-zero value for `refentry.meta.get.quietly`.
Modified: `common/refentry.xml`, 1.17; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.15; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.17; `params/refentry.meta.get.quietly.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - After namespace stripping, the source document is the temporary tree created by the stripping process and it has the wrong base URI for relative references. Earlier versions of this code used to try to fix that by patching the elements with relative `@fileref` attributes. That was inadequate because it calculated an absolute base URI without considering that there might be `xml:base` attributes already in effect. It seems obvious now that the right thing to do is simply to put the `xml:base` on the root of the document. And that seems to work.
Modified: `common/stripns.xml`, 1.7 - Norman Walsh
 - Added support for "software" and "sectdesc" class values on `refmiscinfo`; "software" is treated identically to "source", and "sectdesc" is treated identically to "manual".
Modified: `common/refentry.xml`, 1.10; `params/man.th.extra2.max.length.xml`, 1.3; `params/refentry.source.name.profile.xml`, 1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Added support for DocBook 5 namespace-stripping in manpages stylesheet. Closes request #1210692.
Modified: `common/common.xml`, 1.56; `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.57 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Added `<xsl:template match="/">` to make `stripns.xml` usable as a standalone stylesheet for stripping out DocBook 5/NG to DocBook 4. Note that DocBook XSLT drivers that include this stylesheet all override the `match="/"` template.
Modified: `common/stripns.xml`, 1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Number figures, examples, and tables from `book` if there is no prefix (i.e. if `chapter.autolabel` is set to 0). This avoids having the list of figures where the figures mysteriously restart their numeration periodically when `chapter.autolabel` is set to 0.
Modified: `common/labels.xml`, 1.36 - David Cramer
 - Add `task` template in `title.markup` mode.
Modified: `common/titles.xml`, 1.34 - Robert Stayton
 - Add children (with ids) of formal objects to target data.
Modified: `common/targets.xml`, 1.10 - Robert Stayton
 - Added support for case when `personname` doesn't contain specific name markup (as allowed in DocBook 5.0)
Modified: `common/common.xml`, 1.54 - Jirka Kosek
-

19.2 Extensions

The following changes have been made to the `extensions` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Support Xalan 2.7

Modified: `extensions/xalan27/.cvsignore`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/build.xml`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/nbproject/.cvsignore`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/nbproject/build-impl.xml`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/nbproject/genfiles.properties`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/nbproject/project.xml`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/CVS.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/FormatCallout.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/FormatDingbatCallout.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/FormatGraphicCallout.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/FormatTextCallout.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/FormatUnicodeCallout.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Func.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/ImageIntrinsics.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Params.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Table.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Text.java`,1.1; `extensions/xalan27/src/com/nwalsh/xalan/Verbatim.java`,1.1 - Norman Walsh

- Handle the case where the `imageFn` is actually a `URI`. This still needs work.

Modified: `extensions/saxon643/com/nwalsh/saxon/ImageIntrinsics.java`,1.4 - Norman Walsh

19.3 FO

The following changes have been made to the `fo` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Adapted to the new indexing code. Now works just like a wrapper that calls `kosek` indexing method, originally implemented here.

Modified: `fo/autoidx-ng.xml`,1.5 - Jirka Kosek

- Added parameters for header/footer `table` minimum height.

Modified: `fo/pagesetup.xml`,1.60; `fo/param.ent`,1.100; `fo/param.xweb`,1.113 - Robert Stayton

- Add the `index.method` parameter.

Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.99; `fo/param.xweb`,1.112 - Robert Stayton

- Integrate support for three indexing methods: - the original English-only method. - Jirka Kosek's method using EXSLT extensions. - Eliot Kimber's method using Saxon extensions. Use the '`index.method`' parameter to select.

Modified: `fo/autoidx.xml`,1.38 - Robert Stayton

- Add support for TOC for `qandaset` in `fo` output.

Modified: `fo/autotoc.xml`,1.30; `fo/qandaset.xml`,1.20 - Robert Stayton

- Added parameter `ulink.hyphenate.chars`. Added parameter `insert.link.page.number`.

Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.98; `fo/param.xweb`,1.111 - Robert Stayton

- Implemented feature request #942524 to add `insert.link.page.number` to allow link element cross references to have a page number.

Modified: `fo/xref.xml`,1.67 - Robert Stayton

- Add support for `ulink.hyphenate.chars` so more characters can be break points in urls.

Modified: `fo/xref.xml`,1.66 - Robert Stayton

- Implemented patch #1075144 to make the url text in a `ulink` in FO output an active `link` as well.

Modified: `fo/xref.xml`,1.65 - Robert Stayton

- `table` footnotes now have their own `table.footnote.properties` attribute set.

Modified: `fo/footnote.xml`,1.23 - Robert Stayton

- Add `qandaset` to `root.elements`.
Modified: `fo/docbook.xml`,1.41 - Robert Stayton
 - Added `mode="page.sequence"` to make it easier to put content into a page sequence. First used for `qandaset`.
Modified: `fo/component.xml`,1.37 - Robert Stayton
 - Implemented feature request #1434408 to support formatting of `biblioentry`.
Modified: `fo/biblio.xml`,1.35 - Robert Stayton
 - Added `biblioentry.properties`.
Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.97; `fo/param.xweb`,1.110 - Robert Stayton
 - Support PTC/Arbortext bookmarks
Modified: `fo/docbook.xml`,1.40; `fo/ptc.xml`,1.1 - Norman Walsh
 - Added `table.footnote.properties` to permit `table` footnotes to format differently from regular footnotes.
Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.96; `fo/param.xweb`,1.109 - Robert Stayton
 - Refactored `table` templates to unify their processing and support all options in all types. Now `table` and `informaltable`, in both Cals and Html markup, use the same templates where possible, and all support `pgwide`, rotation, and floats. There is also a placeholder `table.container` template to support wrapping a `table` in a layout `table`, so the XEP `table` title "continued" extension can be more easily implemented.
Modified: `fo/formal.xml`,1.52; `fo/htmltbl.xml`,1.9; `fo/table.xml`,1.48 - Robert Stayton
 - Added new attribute set `toc.line.properties` for controlling appearance of lines in ToC/LoT
Modified: `fo/autotoc.xml`,1.29; `fo/param.ent`,1.95; `fo/param.xweb`,1.108 - Jirka Kosek
 - Added support for float to `example` and `equation`. Added support for `pgwide` to `figure`, `example`, and `equation` (the latter two via a `dbfo pgwide="1"` processing instruction).
Modified: `fo/formal.xml`,1.51 - Robert Stayton
 - Add `pgwide.properties` attribute-set.
Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.94; `fo/param.xweb`,1.107 - Robert Stayton
 - Added `refclass.suppress` param.
If the value of `refclass.suppress` is non-zero, then display `refclass` contents is suppressed in output. Affects HTML and FO output only.
Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.93; `fo/param.xweb`,1.106; `html/param.ent`,1.90; `html/param.xweb`,1.99; `params/refclass.suppress.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Improved support for `task` subelements
Modified: `fo/task.xml`,1.3; `html/task.xml`,1.3 - Jirka Kosek
 - Adjusted spacing around K&R-formatted `Funcdef` and `Paramdef` output such that it can more easily be discerned where one ends and the other begins. Closes #1213264.
Modified: `fo/synop.xml`,1.18 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Made handling of `paramdef/parameter` in FO output consistent with that in HTML and manpages output. Closes #1213259.
Modified: `fo/synop.xml`,1.17 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Made handling of `Refnamediv` consistent with formatting in HTML and manpages output; specifically, changed so that `Re-fname` (comma-separated list of multiple instances found) is used (instead of `Refentrytitle` as previously), then `em-dash`, then the `Refpurpose`. Closes #1212562.
Modified: `fo/refentry.xml`,1.30 - Michael(tm) Smith
-

- Added output of `Releaseinfo` to recto titlepage ("copyright" page) for `Book` in FO output. This makes it consistent with HTML output. Closes #1327034. Thanks to Paul DuBois for reporting.
Modified: `fo/titlepage.templates.xml`, 1.28 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Added condition for setting `block-progression-dimension.minimum` on `table-row`, instead of `height`, when `fop1.extensions` is non-zero. For an explanation of the reason for the change, see: <http://wiki.apache.org/xmlgraphics-fop/Troubleshooting/CommonL>
Modified: `fo/pagesetup.xml`, 1.59 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Added new `refclass.suppress` param for suppressing display of `Refclass` in HTML and FO output. Did not add it to `manpages` because `manpages` stylesheet is currently just silently ignoring `Refclass` anyway. Closes request #1461065. Thanks to Davor Ocelic (docelic) for reporting.
Modified: `fo/refentry.xml`, 1.29; `html/refentry.xml`, 1.23 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Add support for keep-together PI to informal objects.
Modified: `fo/formal.xml`, 1.50 - Robert Stayton
 - Add support for `fop1.extensions`.
Modified: `fo/formal.xml`, 1.49; `fo/graphics.xml`, 1.44; `fo/table.xml`, 1.47 - Robert Stayton
 - Add support for `fop1` bookmarks.
Modified: `fo/docbook.xml`, 1.39 - Robert Stayton
 - Add `fop1.extensions` parameter to add support for fop development version.
Modified: `fo/param.ent`, 1.92; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.105 - Robert Stayton
 - Start supporting fop development version, which will become fop version 1.
Modified: `fo/fop1.xml`, 1.1 - Robert Stayton
 - Add template for `task` in `mode="xref-to"`.
Modified: `fo/xref.xml`, 1.63; `html/xref.xml`, 1.57 - Robert Stayton
 - `table` footnotes now also get `footnote.properties` attribute-set.
Modified: `fo/footnote.xml`, 1.22 - Robert Stayton
 - Added `index.separator` named template to compute the separator punctuation based on locale.
Modified: `fo/autoidx.xml`, 1.36 - Robert Stayton
 - Added support for `link`, `olink`, and `xref` within `OO Classsynopsis` and children. (Because DocBook NG/5 allows it).
Modified: `fo/synop.xml`, 1.15; `html/synop.xml`, 1.19 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Support `date` as an inline
Modified: `fo/inline.xml`, 1.43; `html/inline.xml`, 1.46 - Norman Walsh
 - Added new parameter `keep.relative.image.uris`
Modified: `fo/param.ent`, 1.91; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.104; `html/param.ent`, 1.87; `html/param.xweb`, 1.96; `params/keep.relative.image.uris.xml`
- Norman Walsh
 - Map Unicode space characters U+2000-U+200A to `fo:leaders`.
Modified: `fo/docbook.xml`, 1.38; `fo/passivetex.xml`, 1.4; `fo/spaces.xml`, 1.1 - Jirka Kosek
 - Output a real em dash for `em-dash` dingbat (instead of two hypens).
Modified: `fo/fo.xml`, 1.7 - Michael(tm) Smith
 - Support default `label` width parameters for itemized and ordered lists
Modified: `fo/lists.xml`, 1.64; `fo/param.ent`, 1.90; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.103; `params/itemizedlist.label.width.xml`, 1.1; `params/orderedlist.label`
- Norman Walsh
-

- Generate localized `title` for `Refsynopsisdiv` if no appropriate `Title` descendant found in source. Closes #1212398. This change makes behavior for the `Synopsis` `title` consistent with the behavior of HTML and manpages output.

Also, added `xsl:use-attribute-sets="normal.para.spacing"` to block generated for `Cmdsynopsis` output. Previously, that block had no spacing at all specified, which resulted it being crammed up to closely to the `Synopsis` head.

Modified: `fo/refentry.xml`,1.28; `fo/synop.xml`,1.13 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added parameters to support localization of `index` item punctuation.

Modified: `fo/autoidx.xml`,1.35 - Robert Stayton

- Added `index.number.separator`, `index.range.separator`, and `index.term.separator` parameters to support localization of punctuation in `index` entries.

Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.89; `fo/param.xweb`,1.102 - Robert Stayton

- Added "Cross References" section in HTML doc (for consistency with the FO doc). Also, moved the existing FO "Cross References" section to follow the "Linking" section.

Modified: `fo/param.xweb`,1.101; `html/param.xweb`,1.95 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added ID attributes to all `Reference` elements (e.g., `id="tables"` for the doc for section on `Table` params). So pages for all subsections of ref docs now have stable filenames instead of arbitrary generated filenames.

Modified: `fo/param.xweb`,1.100; `html/param.xweb`,1.94 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added two new parameters for handling of multi-term `varlistentry` elements:

`variablelist.term.break.after`: When the `variablelist.term.break.after` is non-zero, it will generate a line break after each `term` multi-term `varlistentry`.

`variablelist.term.separator`: When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the `variablelist.term.separator` parameter is placed after each `term` except the last. The default is `" "` (a comma followed by a space). To suppress rendering of the separator, set the value of `variablelist.term.separator` to the empty string (`""`).

These parameters are primarily intended to be useful if you have multi-term `varlistentries` that have long terms.

Closes #1306676. Thanks to Sam Steingold for providing an example "lots of long terms" doc that demonstrated the value of having these options.

Also, added `normalize-space()` call to processing of each `term`.

This change affects all output formats (HTML, PDF, manpages). The default behavior should pretty much remain the same as before, but it is possible (as always) that the change may introduce some new bugginess.

Modified: `fo/lists.xml`,1.62; `fo/param.ent`,1.88; `fo/param.xweb`,1.99; `html/lists.xml`,1.48; `html/param.ent`,1.86; `html/param.xweb`,1.93; `manpages/lists.xml`,1.22; `manpages/param.ent`,1.14; `manpages/param.xweb`,1.16; `params/variablelist.term.break.after.xml`,1.1; `params/variablelist.term.separator.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Add `sidebar` `titlepage` placeholder attset for styles.

Modified: `fo/titlepage.xml`,1.37 - Robert Stayton

- Add `titlepage` for `sidebar`.

Modified: `fo/titlepage.templates.xml`,1.27 - Robert Stayton

- Implemented RFE #1292615.

Added bunch of new parameters (attribute sets) that affect list presentation: `list.block.properties`, `itemizedlist.properties`, `orderedlist.properties`, `itemizedlist.label.properties` and `orderedlist.label.properties`. Default behaviour of stylesheets has not been changed but further customizations will be much more easier.

Modified: `fo/lists.xml`,1.61; `fo/param.ent`,1.87; `fo/param.xweb`,1.98; `params/itemizedlist.label.properties.xml`,1.1; `params/itemizedlist.properties.xml`,1.1; `params/list.block.properties.xml`,1.1; `params/orderedlist.label.properties.xml`,1.1; `params/orderedlist.properties.xml`,1.1 - Jirka Kosek

- Implemented RFE #1242092.

You can enable crop marks in your document by setting `crop.marks=1` and `xep.extensions=1`. Appearance of crop marks can be controlled by parameters `crop.mark.bleed` (6pt), `crop.mark.offset` (24pt) and `crop.mark.width` (0.5pt).

Also there is new named template called `user-xep-pis`. You can overwrite it in order to produce some PIs that can control XEP as described in http://www.renderx.com/reference.html#Output_Formats

Modified: `fo/docbook.xsl,1.36`; `fo/param.ent,1.86`; `fo/param.xweb,1.97`; `fo/xep.xsl,1.23`; `params/crop.mark.bleed.xml,1.1`; `params/crop.mark.offset.xml,1.1`; `params/crop.mark.width.xml,1.1`; `params/crop.marks.xml,1.1` - Jirka Kosek

19.4 HTML

The following changes have been made to the `html` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- implemented `index.method` parameter and three methods.

Modified: `html/autoidx.xsl,1.28` - Robert Stayton

- added `index.method` parameter to support 3 indexing methods.

Modified: `html/param.ent,1.94`; `html/param.xweb,1.103` - Robert Stayton

- Implemented feature request #1072510 as a processing instruction to permit including external HTML content into HTML output.

Modified: `html/pi.xsl,1.9` - Robert Stayton

- Added new parameter `chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title` which controls presence of `title` in a separate chunk with ToC/LoT. Disabling `title` can be very useful if you are generating frameset output (well, yes those frames, but some customers really want them ;-).

Modified: `html/chunk-code.xsl,1.15`; `html/param.ent,1.93`; `html/param.xweb,1.102`; `params/chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title.xml,1.1` - Jirka Kosek

- Support `dbhtml/dbfo` start PI for `orderedlist` numbering in both HTML and FO

Modified: `common/common.xsl,1.61`; `html/lists.xsl,1.50` - Norman Walsh

- Allow ToC without `title` also for `set` and `book`.

Modified: `html/autotoc.xsl,1.37`; `html/division.xsl,1.12` - Jirka Kosek

- Implemented floats uniformly for `figure`, `example`, `equation` and `informalfigure`, `informalexample`, and `informalequation`.

Modified: `html/formal.xsl,1.22` - Robert Stayton

- Added the `autotoc.label.in.hyperlink` param.

If the value of `autotoc.label.in.hyperlink` is non-zero, labels are included in hyperlinked titles in the TOC. If it is instead zero, labels are still displayed prior to the hyperlinked titles, but are not hyperlinked along with the titles.

Closes patch #1065868. Thanks to anatoly techtonik for the patch.

Modified: `html/autotoc.xsl,1.36`; `html/param.ent,1.92`; `html/param.xweb,1.101`; `params/autotoc.label.in.hyperlink.xml,1.1` - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added two new params: `html.head.legalnotice.link.types` and `html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple`.

If the value of the `generate.legalnotice.link` is non-zero, then the stylesheet generates (in the head section of the HTML source) either a single HTML link element or, if the value of the `html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple` is non-zero, one link element for each link type specified. Each link has the following attributes:

- a `rel` attribute whose value is derived from the value of `html.head.legalnotice.link.types`

- an `href` attribute whose value is set to the URL of the file containing the `legalnotice`

- a `title` attribute whose value is set to the `title` of the corresponding `legalnotice` (or a `title` programatically determined by the stylesheet)

For example:

```
<link rel="copyright" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
```

Closes #1476450. Thanks to Sam Steingold.

Modified: `html/chunk-common.xml,1.45`; `html/param.ent,1.91`; `html/param.xweb,1.100`; `params/generate.legalnotice.link.xml,1.4`; `params/html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple.xml,1.1`; `params/html.head.legalnotice.link.types.xml,1.1` - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `refclass.suppress` param.

If the value of `refclass.suppress` is non-zero, then display `refclass` contents is suppressed in output. Affects HTML and FO output only.

Modified: `fo/param.ent,1.93`; `fo/param.xweb,1.106`; `html/param.ent,1.90`; `html/param.xweb,1.99`; `params/refclass.suppress.xml,1.1` - Michael(tm) Smith

- Improved support for `task` subelements

Modified: `fo/task.xml,1.3`; `html/task.xml,1.3` - Jirka Kosek

- Added new `refclass.suppress` param for suppressing display of `Refclass` in HTML and FO output. Did not add it to manpages because manpages stylesheet is currently just silently ignoring `Refclass` anyway. Closes request #1461065. Thanks to Davor Ocelic (docelic) for reporting.

Modified: `fo/refentry.xml,1.29`; `html/refentry.xml,1.23` - Michael(tm) Smith

- Process `alt` text with `normalize-space()`. Replace tab indents with spaces.

Modified: `html/graphics.xml,1.57` - Robert Stayton

- Content of `citation` element is automatically linked to the bibliographic entry with the corresponding `abbrev`.

Modified: `html/biblio.xml,1.26`; `html/inline.xml,1.47`; `html/xref.xml,1.58` - Jirka Kosek

- Add template for `task` in `mode="xref-to"`.

Modified: `fo/xref.xml,1.63`; `html/xref.xml,1.57` - Robert Stayton

- Suppress ID warnings if the `.warnings` parameter is 0

Modified: `html/html.xml,1.17` - Norman Walsh

- Add support for `floatstyle` to `figure`.

Modified: `html/formal.xml,1.21` - Robert Stayton

- Handling of `xref` to `area/areaset` need support in extensions code also. I currently have no time to touch extensions code, so code is here to be enabled when extension is fixed also.

Modified: `html/xref.xml,1.56` - Jirka Kosek

- Added 3 parameters for overriding `gentext` for `index` punctuation.

Modified: `html/param.ent,1.89`; `html/param.xweb,1.98` - Robert Stayton

- Added parameters to support localization of `index` item punctuation. Added `index.separator` named template to compute the separator punctuation based on locale.

Modified: `html/autoidx.xml,1.27` - Robert Stayton

- Added a `<div class="{ $class }-contents">` wrapper around output of contents of all formal objects. Also, added an optional `<br class="{ $class }-break"/>` linebreak after all formal objects.

WARNING: Because this change places an additional DIV between the DIV wrapper for the `equation` and the `equation` contents, it may break some existing CSS stylesheets that have been created with the assumption that there would never be an intervening DIV there.

The following is an example of what `Equation` output looks like as a result of the changes described above.

```
<div class="equation"> <a name="three" id="three"></a>
```

```
<p class="title"><b>(1.3)</b></p>
```

```
<div class="equation-contents"> <span class="mathphrase">1+1=3</span> </div> </div><br class="equation-break">
```

Rationale: These changes allow CSS control of the placement of the formal-object `title` relative to the formal-object contents. For example, using the CSS "float" property enables the `title` and contents to be rendered on the same line. Example stylesheet:

```
.equation { margin-top: 20px; margin-bottom: 20px; } .equation-contents { float: left; }  
.equation.title { margin-top: 0; float: right; margin-right: 200px; }  
.equation.title b { font-weight: normal; }  
.equation-break { clear: both; }
```

Note that the purpose of the ".equation-break" class is to provide a way to clear off the floats.

If you want to instead have the `equation title` rendered to the left of the `equation` contents, you can do something like this:

```
.equation { margin-top: 20px; width: 300px; margin-bottom: 20px; } .equation-contents { float: right; }  
.equation.title { margin-top: 0; float: left; margin-right: 200px; }  
.equation.title b { font-weight: normal; }  
.equation-break { clear: both; }
```

Modified: `html/formal.xml`, 1.20 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added a `chunker.output.quiet` top-level parameter so that the chunker can be made quiet by default

Modified: `html/chunker.xml`, 1.26 - Norman Walsh

- Added support for `link`, `olink`, and `xref` within OO `Classsynopsis` and `children`. (Because DocBook NG/5 allows it).

Modified: `fo/synop.xml`, 1.15; `html/synop.xml`, 1.19 - Michael(tm) Smith

- New parameter: `id.warnings`. If non-zero, warnings are generated for titled objects that don't have titles. True by default; I wonder if this will be too aggressive?

Modified: `html/biblio.xml`, 1.25; `html/component.xml`, 1.27; `html/division.xml`, 1.11; `html/formal.xml`, 1.19; `html/glossary.xml`, 1.20; `html/html.xml`, 1.13; `html/index.xml`, 1.16; `html/param.ent`, 1.88; `html/param.xweb`, 1.97; `html/refentry.xml`, 1.22; `html/sections.xml`, 1.30; `params/id.warnings.xml`, 1.1 - Norman Walsh

- If the `keep.relative.image.uris` parameter is true, don't use the absolute URI (as calculated from `xml:base`) in the `img` `src` attribute, use the value the `author` specified. Note that we still have to calculate the absolute `filename` for use in the `image` `intrinsic` extension.

Modified: `html/graphics.xml`, 1.56 - Norman Walsh

- Support `date` as an inline

Modified: `fo/inline.xml`, 1.43; `html/inline.xml`, 1.46 - Norman Walsh

- Added new parameter `keep.relative.image.uris`

Modified: `fo/param.ent`, 1.91; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.104; `html/param.ent`, 1.87; `html/param.xweb`, 1.96; `params/keep.relative.image.uris.xml` - Norman Walsh

- Added two new parameters for handling of multi-term `varlistentry` elements:

`variablelist.term.break.after`: When the `variablelist.term.break.after` is non-zero, it will generate a line break after each `term` multi-term `varlistentry`.

`variablelist.term.separator`: When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the `variablelist.term.separator` parameter is placed after each `term` except the last. The default is ", " (a comma followed by a space). To suppress rendering of the separator, set the value of `variablelist.term.separator` to the empty string ("").

These parameters are primarily intended to be useful if you have multi-term `varlistentries` that have long terms.

Closes #1306676. Thanks to Sam Steingold for providing an example "lots of long terms" doc that demonstrated the value of having these options.

Also, added `normalize-space()` call to processing of each `term`.

This change affects all output formats (HTML, PDF, manpages). The default behavior should pretty much remain the same as before, but it is possible (as always) that the change may introduce some new bugginess.

Modified: fo/lists.xsl,1.62; fo/param.ent,1.88; fo/param.xweb,1.99; html/lists.xsl,1.48; html/param.ent,1.86; html/param.xweb,1.93; manpages/lists.xsl,1.22; manpages/param.ent,1.14; manpages/param.xweb,1.16; params/variablelist.term.break.after.xml,1.1; params/variablelist.term.separator.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added "wrapper-name" param to inline.charseq named template, enabling it to output inlines other than just "span". `Acronym` and `Abbrev` templates now use `inline.charseq` to output HTML "acronym" and "abbr" elements (instead of "span"). Closes #1305468. Thanks to Sam Steingold for suggesting the change.

Modified: html/inline.xsl,1.45 - Michael(tm) Smith

19.5 Manpages

The following changes have been made to the `manpages` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Added the following params:

- `man.indent.width` (string-valued) - `man.indent.refsect` (boolean) - `man.indent.blurbs` (boolean) - `man.indent.lists` (boolean) - `man.indent.verbatims` (boolean)

Note that in earlier snapshots, `man.indent.width` was named `man.indentation.default.value` and the boolean params had names like `man.indentation.*.adjust`. Also the `man.indent.blurbs` param was called `man.indentation.authors.adjust` (or something).

The behavior now is: If the value of a particular `man.indent.*` boolean param is non-zero, the corresponding contents (refsect*, list items, authorblurb/personblurb, verbatims) are displayed with a left margin indented by a width equal to the value of `man.indent.width`.

Modified: params/man.indent.blurbs.xml,1.1; manpages/docbook.xsl,1.74; manpages/info.xsl,1.20; manpages/lists.xsl,1.30; manpages/other.xsl,1.20; manpages/param.ent,1.22; manpages/param.xweb,1.24; manpages/refentry.xsl,1.14; params/man.indent.lists.xml,1.1; params/man.indent.refsect.xml,1.1; params/man.indent.verbatims.xml,1.1; params/man.indent.width.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.table.footnotes.divider` param.

In each `table` that contains footnotes, the string specified by the `man.table.footnotes.divider` parameter is output before the list of footnotes for the `table`.

Modified: manpages/docbook.xsl,1.73; manpages/links.xsl,1.6; manpages/param.ent,1.21; manpages/param.xweb,1.23; params/man.table.footnotes.divider.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added the `man.output.in.separate.dir`, `man.output.base.dir`, and `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameters.

The `man.output.base.dir` parameter specifies the base directory into which man-page files are output. The `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameter controls whether the files are output in subdirectories within the base directory.

The values of the `man.output.base.dir` and `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameters are used only if the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` parameter is non-zero. If the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` is zero, man-page files are not output in a separate directory.

Modified: manpages/docbook.xsl,1.72; manpages/param.ent,1.20; manpages/param.xweb,1.22; params/man.output.base.dir.xml,1.1; params/man.output.in.separate.dir.xml,1.1; params/man.output.subdirs.enabled.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.font.table.headings` and `man.font.table.title` params, for controlling font in `table` headings and titles.

Modified: manpages/docbook.xsl,1.71; manpages/param.ent,1.19; manpages/param.xweb,1.21; params/man.font.table.headings.xml,1.1; params/man.font.table.title.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.font.funcsynopsisinfo` and `man.font.funcprototype` params, for specifying the roff font (for example, BI, B, I) for `funcsynopsisinfo` and `funcprototype` output.

Modified: manpages/block.xsl,1.19; manpages/docbook.xsl,1.69; manpages/param.ent,1.18; manpages/param.xweb,1.20; manpages/synop.xsl,1.29; manpages/table.xsl,1.21; params/man.font.funcprototype.xml,1.1; params/man.font.funcsynopsisinfo.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.segtitle.suppress` param.

If the value of `man.segtitle.suppress` is non-zero, then display of `segtitle` contents is suppressed in output.

Modified: manpages/docbook.xsl,1.68; manpages/param.ent,1.17; manpages/param.xweb,1.19; params/man.segtitle.suppress.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.output.manifest.enabled` and `man.output.manifest.filename` params.

If `man.output.manifest.enabled` is non-zero, a list of filenames for man pages generated by the stylesheet transformation is written to the file named by `man.output.manifest.filename`

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.67; `manpages/other.xml`, 1.19; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.16; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.18; `params/man.output.manifest.enabled.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.output.manifest.filename.xml`, 1.1; `tools/make/Makefile.DocBook`, 1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `refentry.meta.get.quietly` param.

If zero (the default), notes and warnings about "missing" markup are generated during gathering of `refentry` metadata. If non-zero, the metadata is gathered "quietly" -- that is, the notes and warnings are suppressed.

NOTE: If you are processing a large amount of `refentry` content, you may be able to speed up processing significantly by setting a non-zero value for `refentry.meta.get.quietly`.

Modified: `common/refentry.xml`, 1.17; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.15; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.17; `params/refentry.meta.get.quietly.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Changed names of all boolean indentation params to `man.indent.*`. Also discarded individual `man.indent.*.value` params and switched to just using a common `man.indent.width` param (3n by default).

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.66; `manpages/info.xml`, 1.19; `manpages/lists.xml`, 1.29; `manpages/other.xml`, 1.18; `manpages/refentry.xml`, 1.13 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added boolean `man.output.in.separate.dir` param, to control whether or not man files are output in separate directory.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.65; `manpages/utility.xml`, 1.14 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added options for controlling indentation of verbatim output. Controlled through the `man.indentation.verbatims.adjust` and `man.indentation.verbatims.value` params. Closes #1242997

Modified: `manpages/block.xml`, 1.15; `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.64 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added options for controlling indentation in lists and in `*blurb` output in the `AUTHORS` section. Controlled through the `man.indentation.lists.adjust`, `man.indentation.lists.value`, `man.indentation.authors.adjust`, and `man.indentation.authors.value` parameters. Default is 3 characters (instead of the roff default of 8 characters). Closes #1449369.

Also, removed the indent that was being set on `informalexample` output. I will instead add an option for indenting verbatims, which I think is what the `informalexample` indent was intended for originally.

Modified: `manpages/block.xml`, 1.14; `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.63; `manpages/info.xml`, 1.18; `manpages/lists.xml`, 1.28 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Changed line-spacing call before `synopfragment` to use `".sp -1n"` ("n" units specified) instead of plain `".sp -1"`

Modified: `manpages/synop.xml`, 1.28 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added support for writing man files into a specific output directory and into appropriate subdirectories within that output directory. Controlled through the `man.base.dir` parameter (similar to the `base.dir` support in the HTML stylesheet) and the `man.subdirs.enabled` parameter, which automatically determines the name of an appropriate subdir (for example, `man/man7`, `man/man1`, etc.) based on the `section number/manvolnum` of the source `Refentry`.

Closes #1255036 and #1170317. Thanks to Denis Bradford for the original feature request, and to Costin Stroie for submitting a patch that was very helpful in implementing the support.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.62; `manpages/utility.xml`, 1.13 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Refined XPath statements and notification messages for `refentry` metadata handling.

Modified: `common/common.xml`, 1.59; `common/refentry.xml`, 1.14; `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.61; `manpages/other.xml`, 1.17 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added support for `copyright` and `legalnotice`. The manpages stylesheets now output a `COPYRIGHT` section, after the `AUTHORS` section, if a `copyright` or `legalnotice` is found in the source. The section contains the `copyright` contents followed by the `legalnotice` contents. Closes #1450209.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`, 1.59; `manpages/info.xml`, 1.17 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Drastically reworked all of the XPath expressions used in `refentry` metadata gathering -- completely removed `$parentinfo` and turned `$info` into a set of nodes that includes the `*info` contents of the `Refentry` plus the `*info` contents all all of its ancestor elements. The basic XPath expression now used throughout is (using the example of checking for a `date`):

`((($info[//date])[last()]/date)[1]`.

That selects the "last" `*info/date` `date` in document order -- that is, the one either on the `Refentry` itself or on the closest ancestor to the `Refentry`.

It's likely this change may break some things; may need to pick up some pieces later.

Also, changed the default value for the `man.th.extra2.max.length` from 40 to 30.

Modified: `common/common.xml`,1.58; `common/refentry.xml`,1.7; `params/man.th.extra2.max.length.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.date.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.manual.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.source.name.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.version.profile.xml`,1.2; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.58; `manpages/other.xml`,1.15 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added support for DocBook 5 namespace-stripping in `manpages` stylesheet. Closes request #1210692.

Modified: `common/common.xml`,1.56; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.57 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Fixed handling of `table` footnotes. With this checkin, the `table` support in the `manpages` stylesheet is now basically feature complete. So this change closes request #619532, "No support for tables" -- the oldest currently open `manpages` feature request, submitted by Ben Secrest (blsecres) on 2002-10-07. Congratulations to me [patting myself on the back].

Modified: `manpages/block.xml`,1.11; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.55; `manpages/table.xml`,1.15 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added handling for `table` titles. Also fixed handling of nested tables; nest tables are now "extracted" and displayed just after their parent tables.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.54; `manpages/table.xml`,1.14 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added option for turning off bold formatting in `Funcsynopsis`. Boldface formatting in `function synopsis` is mandated in the `man(7)` man page and is used almost universally in existing man pages. Despite that, it really does look like crap to have an entire `Funcsynopsis` output in bold, so I added params for turning off the bold formatting and/or replacing it with a different roff special font (e.g., "RI" for alternating roman/italic instead of the default "BI" for alternating bold/italic). The new params are "man.funcprototype.font" and "man.funcsynopsisinfo.font". To be documented later.

Closes #1452247. Thanks to Joe Orton for the feature request.

Modified: `params/man.string.subst.map.xml`,1.16; `manpages/block.xml`,1.10; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.51; `manpages/inline.xml`,1.16; `manpages/synop.xml`,1.27 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Use `AUTHORS` instead of `AUTHOR` if we have multiple people to attribute. Also, fixed checking such that we generate `author section` even if we don't have an `author` (as long as there is at least one other person/entity we can put in the `section`). Also adjusted assembly of content for `Author` `metainfo` field such that we now not only use `author`, but try to find a "best match" if we can't find an `author` name to put there.

Closes #1233592. Thanks to Sam Steingold for the request.

Modified: `manpages/info.xml`,1.12 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Changes for request #1243027, "Improve handling of `AUTHOR` section." This adds support for `Collab`, `Corpauthor`, `Corpcredit`, `Orgname`, `Publishername`, and `Publisher`. Also adds support for output of `Affiliation` and its children, and support for using `gentext` strings for auto-attributing roles (`Author`, `Editor`, `Publisher`, `Translator`, etc.). Also did a lot of code cleanup and modularization of all the `AUTHOR` handling code. And fixed a bug that was causing `Author info` to not be picked up correctly for `metainfo` comment we embed in `man-page` source.

Modified: `manpages/info.xml`,1.11 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Support bold output for "emphasis remap='B'". (because Eric Raymond's `doclifter(1)` tool converts `groff` source marked up with ".B" request or "\fB" escapes to DocBook "emphasis remap='B'".)

Modified: `manpages/inline.xml`,1.14 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added support for `Segmentedlist`. Details: Output is tabular, with no option for "list" type output. Output for `Segtitle` elements can be suppressed by setting `man.segtitle.suppress`. If `Segtitle` content is output, it is rendered in italic type (not bold because not all terminals support bold and so italic ensures the stand out on those terminals). Extra space (.sp line) at end

of `table` code ensures that it gets handled correctly in the case where its source is the child of a `Para`. Closes feature-request #1400097. Thanks to Daniel Leidert for the patch and push, and to Alastair Rankine for filing the original feature request.

Modified: `manpages/lists.xml`,1.23; `manpages/utility.xml`,1.10 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Improved handling of `Author/Editor/Othercredit`.

Reworked content of (non-visible) comment added at top of each page (metadata stuff).

Added support for generating a *manifest* file (useful for cleaning up after builds, etc.)

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.46; `manpages/info.xml`,1.9; `manpages/other.xml`,1.12; `manpages/utility.xml`,1.6 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added two new parameters for handling of multi-term `varlistentry` elements:

variablelist.term.break.after: When the *variablelist.term.break.after* is non-zero, it will generate a line break after each term multi-term `varlistentry`.

variablelist.term.separator: When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the *variablelist.term.separator* parameter is placed after each `term` except the last. The default is ", " (a comma followed by a space). To suppress rendering of the separator, set the value of *variablelist.term.separator* to the empty string ("").

These parameters are primarily intended to be useful if you have multi-term `varlistentries` that have long terms.

Closes #1306676. Thanks to Sam Steingold for providing an example "lots of long terms" doc that demonstrated the value of having these options.

Also, added `normalize-space()` call to processing of each `term`.

This change affects all output formats (HTML, PDF, manpages). The default behavior should pretty much remain the same as before, but it is possible (as always) that the change may introduce some new bugginess.

Modified: `fo/lists.xml`,1.62; `fo/param.ent`,1.88; `fo/param.xweb`,1.99; `html/lists.xml`,1.48; `html/param.ent`,1.86; `html/param.xweb`,1.93; `manpages/lists.xml`,1.22; `manpages/param.ent`,1.14; `manpages/param.xweb`,1.16; `params/variablelist.term.break.after.xml`,1.1; `params/variablelist.term.separator.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

19.6 Params

The following changes have been made to the `params` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- New parameters to set header/footer `table` minimum height.

Modified: `params/footer.table.height.xml`,1.1; `params/header.table.height.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Support multiple indexing methods for different languages.

Modified: `params/index.method.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Remove `qandaset` and `qandadiv` from *generate.toc* for fo output because formerly it wasn't working, but now it is and the default behavior should stay the same.

Modified: `params/generate.toc.xml`,1.8 - Robert Stayton

- add support for page number references to `link` element too.

Modified: `params/insert.link.page.number.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Add support for more characters to hyphen on when *ulink.hyphenate* is turned on.

Modified: `params/ulink.hyphenate.chars.xml`,1.1; `params/ulink.hyphenate.xml`,1.3 - Robert Stayton

- New attribute-set to format `biblioentry` and `bibliomixed`.

Modified: `params/biblioentry.properties.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Added new parameter `chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title` which controls presence of `title` in a separate chunk with ToC/LoT. Disabling `title` can be very useful if you are generating frameset output (well, yes those frames, but some customers really want them ;-).

Modified: `html/chunk-code.xml`,1.15; `html/param.ent`,1.93; `html/param.xweb`,1.102; `params/chunk.tocs.and.lots.has.title.xml`,1.1 - Jirka Kosek

- Added new attribute set `toc.line.properties` for controlling appearance of lines in ToC/LoT

Modified: `params/toc.line.properties.xml`,1.1 - Jirka Kosek

- Allow `table` footnotes to have different properties from regular footnotes.

Modified: `params/table.footnote.properties.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Set properties for `pgwide="1"` objects.

Modified: `params/pgwide.properties.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Added the `autotoc.label.in.hyperlink` param.

If the value of `autotoc.label.in.hyperlink` is non-zero, labels are included in hyperlinked titles in the TOC. If it is instead zero, labels are still displayed prior to the hyperlinked titles, but are not hyperlinked along with the titles.

Closes patch #1065868. Thanks to anatoly techtonik for the patch.

Modified: `html/autotoc.xml`,1.36; `html/param.ent`,1.92; `html/param.xweb`,1.101; `params/autotoc.label.in.hyperlink.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added two new params: `html.head.legalnotice.link.types` and `html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple`.

If the value of the `generate.legalnotice.link` is non-zero, then the stylesheet generates (in the `head` section of the HTML source) either a single HTML `link` element or, if the value of the `html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple` is non-zero, one `link` element for each `link` type specified. Each `link` has the following attributes:

- a `rel` attribute whose value is derived from the value of `html.head.legalnotice.link.types`

- an `href` attribute whose value is set to the URL of the file containing the `legalnotice`

- a `title` attribute whose value is set to the `title` of the corresponding `legalnotice` (or a `title` programatically determined by the stylesheet)

For example:

```
<link rel="copyright" href="ln-id2524073.html" title="Legal Notice">
```

Closes #1476450. Thanks to Sam Steingold.

Modified: `html/chunk-common.xml`,1.45; `html/param.ent`,1.91; `html/param.xweb`,1.100; `params/generate.legalnotice.link.xml`,1.4; `params/html.head.legalnotice.link.multiple.xml`,1.1; `params/html.head.legalnotice.link.types.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added the following params:

- `man.indent.width` (string-valued) - `man.indent.refsect` (boolean) - `man.indent.blurbs` (boolean) - `man.indent.lists` (boolean) - `man.indent.verbatims` (boolean)

Note that in earlier snapshots, `man.indent.width` was named `man.indentation.default.value` and the boolean params had names like `man.indentation.*.adjust`. Also the `man.indent.blurbs` param was called `man.indentation.authors.adjust` (or something).

The behavior now is: If the value of a particular `man.indent.*` boolean param is non-zero, the corresponding contents (`refsect*`, list items, `authorblurb/personblurb`, `vervatims`) are displayed with a left margin indented by a width equal to the value of `man.indent.width`.

Modified: `params/man.indent.blurbs.xml`,1.1; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.74; `manpages/info.xml`,1.20; `manpages/lists.xml`,1.30; `manpages/other.xml`,1.20; `manpages/param.ent`,1.22; `manpages/param.xweb`,1.24; `manpages/refentry.xml`,1.14; `params/man.indent.lists.xml`,1.1; `params/man.indent.refsect.xml`,1.1; `params/man.indent.verbatims.xml`,1.1; `params/man.indent.width.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.table.footnotes.divider` param.

In each `table` that contains footnotes, the string specified by the `man.table.footnotes.divider` parameter is output before the list of footnotes for the `table`.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.73; `manpages/links.xml`,1.6; `manpages/param.ent`,1.21; `manpages/param.xweb`,1.23; `params/man.table.footnotes.divider.xml`,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added the `man.output.in.separate.dir`, `man.output.base.dir`, and `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameters.

The `man.output.base.dir` parameter specifies the base directory into which man-page files are output. The `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameter controls whether the files are output in subdirectories within the base directory.

The values of the `man.output.base.dir` and `man.output.subdirs.enabled` parameters are used only if the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` parameter is non-zero. If the value of `man.output.in.separate.dir` is zero, man-page files are not output in a separate directory.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xsl`, 1.72; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.20; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.22; `params/man.output.base.dir.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.output.in.separate.dir.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.output.subdirs.enabled.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.font.table.headings` and `man.font.table.title` params, for controlling font in `table` headings and titles.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xsl`, 1.71; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.19; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.21; `params/man.font.table.headings.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.font.table.title.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.font.funcsynopsisinfo` and `man.font.funcprototype` params, for specifying the roff font (for example, BI, B, I) for `funcsynopsisinfo` and `funcprototype` output.

Modified: `manpages/block.xsl`, 1.19; `manpages/docbook.xsl`, 1.69; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.18; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.20; `manpages/synop.xsl`, 1.29; `manpages/table.xsl`, 1.21; `params/man.font.funcprototype.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.font.funcsynopsisinfo.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Changed to `select="0"` in `refclass.suppress` (instead of `..>0</..`)

Modified: `params/refclass.suppress.xml`, 1.3 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.segtitle.suppress` param.

If the value of `man.segtitle.suppress` is non-zero, then display of `segtitle` contents is suppressed in output.

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xsl`, 1.68; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.17; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.19; `params/man.segtitle.suppress.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `man.output.manifest.enabled` and `man.output.manifest.filename` params.

If `man.output.manifest.enabled` is non-zero, a list of filenames for man pages generated by the stylesheet transformation is written to the file named by `man.output.manifest.filename`

Modified: `manpages/docbook.xsl`, 1.67; `manpages/other.xsl`, 1.19; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.16; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.18; `params/man.output.manifest.enabled.xml`, 1.1; `params/man.output.manifest.filename.xml`, 1.1; `tools/make/Makefile.DocBook`, 1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `refclass.suppress` param.

If the value of `refclass.suppress` is non-zero, then display `refclass` contents is suppressed in output. Affects HTML and FO output only.

Modified: `fo/param.ent`, 1.93; `fo/param.xweb`, 1.106; `html/param.ent`, 1.90; `html/param.xweb`, 1.99; `params/refclass.suppress.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added `refentry.meta.get.quietly` param.

If zero (the default), notes and warnings about "missing" markup are generated during gathering of `refentry` metadata. If non-zero, the metadata is gathered "quietly" -- that is, the notes and warnings are suppressed.

NOTE: If you are processing a large amount of `refentry` content, you may be able to speed up processing significantly by setting a non-zero value for `refentry.meta.get.quietly`.

Modified: `common/refentry.xsl`, 1.17; `manpages/param.ent`, 1.15; `manpages/param.xweb`, 1.17; `params/refentry.meta.get.quietly.xml`, 1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added support for "software" and "sectdesc" class values on `refmiscinfo`; "software" is treated identically to "source", and "sectdesc" is treated identically to "manual".

Modified: `common/refentry.xsl`, 1.10; `params/man.th.extra2.max.length.xml`, 1.3; `params/refentry.source.name.profile.xml`, 1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Drastically reworked all of the XPath expressions used in `refentry` metadata gathering -- completely removed `$parentinfo` and turned `$info` into a set of nodes that includes the `*info` contents of the `Refentry` plus the `*info` contents all all of its ancestor elements. The basic XPath expression now used throughout is (using the example of checking for a `date`):

`((($info[//date])[last()]/date)[1]`.

That selects the "last" `*info/date` `date` in document order -- that is, the one either on the `Refentry` itself or on the closest ancestor to the `Refentry`.

It's likely this change may break some things; may need to pick up some pieces later.

Also, changed the default value for the `man.th.extra2.max.length` from 40 to 30.

Modified: `common/common.xml`,1.58; `common/refentry.xml`,1.7; `params/man.th.extra2.max.length.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.date.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.manual.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.source.name.profile.xml`,1.2; `params/refentry.version.profile.xml`,1.2; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.58; `manpages/other.xml`,1.15 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Added option for turning off bold formatting in `Funcsynopsis`. Boldface formatting in `function synopsis` is mandated in the `man(7)` man page and is used almost universally in existing man pages. Despite that, it really does look like crap to have an entire `Funcsynopsis` output in bold, so I added params for turning off the bold formatting and/or replacing it with a different roff special font (e.g., "RI" for alternating roman/italic instead of the default "BI" for alternating bold/italic). The new params are `"man.funcprototype.font"` and `"man.funcsynopsisinfo.font"`. To be documented later.

Closes #1452247. Thanks to Joe Orton for the feature request.

Modified: `params/man.string.subst.map.xml`,1.16; `manpages/block.xml`,1.10; `manpages/docbook.xml`,1.51; `manpages/inline.xml`,1.16; `manpages/synop.xml`,1.27 - Michael(tm) Smith

- `fop.extensions` now only for FOP version 0.20.5 and earlier.

Modified: `params/fop.extensions.xml`,1.4 - Robert Stayton

- Support for `fop1` different from `fop` 0.20.5 and earlier.

Modified: `params/fop1.extensions.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Reset default value to empty string so template uses `gentext` first, then the parameter value if not empty.

Modified: `params/index.number.separator.xml`,1.2; `params/index.range.separator.xml`,1.2; `params/index.term.separator.xml`,1.2 - Robert Stayton

- New parameter: `id.warnings`. If non-zero, warnings are generated for titled objects that don't have titles. True by default; I wonder if this will be too aggressive?

Modified: `html/biblio.xml`,1.25; `html/component.xml`,1.27; `html/division.xml`,1.11; `html/formal.xml`,1.19; `html/glossary.xml`,1.20; `html/html.xml`,1.13; `html/index.xml`,1.16; `html/param.ent`,1.88; `html/param.xweb`,1.97; `html/refentry.xml`,1.22; `html/sections.xml`,1.30; `params/id.warnings.xml`,1.1 - Norman Walsh

- Added new parameter `keep.relative.image.uris`

Modified: `fo/param.ent`,1.91; `fo/param.xweb`,1.104; `html/param.ent`,1.87; `html/param.xweb`,1.96; `params/keep.relative.image.uris.xml`,1.1 - Norman Walsh

- Support default `label` width parameters for itemized and ordered lists

Modified: `fo/lists.xml`,1.64; `fo/param.ent`,1.90; `fo/param.xweb`,1.103; `params/itemizedlist.label.width.xml`,1.1; `params/orderedlist.label.width.xml`,1.1 - Norman Walsh

- Added parameters to localize punctuation in indexes.

Modified: `params/index.number.separator.xml`,1.1; `params/index.range.separator.xml`,1.1; `params/index.term.separator.xml`,1.1 - Robert Stayton

- Added two new parameters for handling of multi-term `varlistentry` elements:

`variablelist.term.break.after`: When the `variablelist.term.break.after` is non-zero, it will generate a line break after each `term` multi-term `varlistentry`.

`variablelist.term.separator`: When a `varlistentry` contains multiple `term` elements, the string specified in the value of the `variablelist.term.separator` parameter is placed after each `term` except the last. The default is ", " (a

comma followed by a space). To suppress rendering of the separator, set the value of `variablelist.term.separator` to the empty string ("").

These parameters are primarily intended to be useful if you have multi-term varlistentries that have long terms.

Closes #1306676. Thanks to Sam Steingold for providing an example "lots of long terms" doc that demonstrated the value of having these options.

Also, added `normalize-space()` call to processing of each `term`.

This change affects all output formats (HTML, PDF, manpages). The default behavior should pretty much remain the same as before, but it is possible (as always) that the change may introduce some new bugginess.

Modified: fo/lists.xml,1.62; fo/param.ent,1.88; fo/param.xweb,1.99; html/lists.xml,1.48; html/param.ent,1.86; html/param.xweb,1.93; manpages/lists.xml,1.22; manpages/param.ent,1.14; manpages/param.xweb,1.16; params/variablelist.term.break.after.xml,1.1; params/variablelist.term.separator.xml,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

- Convert 'no' to string in default value.

Modified: params/olink.doctitle.xml,1.4 - Robert Stayton

- Implemented RFE #1292615.

Added bunch of new parameters (attribute sets) that affect list presentation: `list.block.properties`, `itemizedlist.properties`, `orderedlist.properties`, `itemizedlist.label.properties` and `orderedlist.label.properties`. Default behaviour of stylesheets has not been changed but further customizations will be much more easier.

Modified: fo/lists.xml,1.61; fo/param.ent,1.87; fo/param.xweb,1.98; params/itemizedlist.label.properties.xml,1.1; params/itemizedlist.properties.xml,1.1; params/list.block.properties.xml,1.1; params/orderedlist.label.properties.xml,1.1; params/orderedlist.properties.xml,1.1 - Jirka Kosek

- Implemented RFE #1242092.

You can enable crop marks in your document by setting `crop.marks=1` and `xep.extensions=1`. Appearance of crop marks can be controlled by parameters `crop.mark.bleed` (6pt), `crop.mark.offset` (24pt) and `crop.mark.width` (0.5pt).

Also there is new named template called `user-xep-pis`. You can overwrite it in order to produce some PIs that can control XEP as described in http://www.renderx.com/reference.html#Output_Formats

Modified: fo/docbook.xml,1.36; fo/param.ent,1.86; fo/param.xweb,1.97; fo/xep.xml,1.23; params/crop.mark.bleed.xml,1.1; params/crop.mark.offset.xml,1.1; params/crop.mark.width.xml,1.1; params/crop.marks.xml,1.1 - Jirka Kosek

- Changed short descriptions in doc for `*autolabel*` params to match new autolabel behavior.

Modified: params/appendix.autolabel.xml,1.5; params/chapter.autolabel.xml,1.4; params/part.autolabel.xml,1.5; params/preface.autolabel.xml,1.4 - Michael(tm) Smith

19.7 Profiling

The following changes have been made to the `profiling` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Profiling now works together with namespace stripping (V5 documents). Namespace stripping should work with all stylesheets named `profile-`, even if they are not supporting namespace stripping in a non-profiling variant.

Modified: profiling/profile-mode.xml,1.4; profiling/xsl2profile.xml,1.7 - Jirka Kosek

- Moved profiling stage out of templates. This make possible to reuse profiled content by several templates and still maintaing node indenty (needed for example for HTML Help where content is processed multiple times).

I don't know why this was not on the top level before. Maybe some XSLT processors choked on it. I hope this will be OK now.

Modified: profiling/xsl2profile.xml,1.5 - Jirka Kosek

19.8 Tools

The following changes have been made to the `tools` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- Moved `Makefile.DocBook` from `contrib` module to `xsl` module.

Modified: tools/make/Makefile.DocBook,1.1 - Michael(tm) Smith

19.9 WordML

The following changes have been made to the `wordml` code since the 1.69.1 release.

- added `contrib` element, better handling of default paragraph style
Modified: `wordml/pages-normalise.xml`, 1.6; `wordml/supported.xml`, 1.2; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.14 - Steve Ball
- added `bridgehead`
Modified: `wordml/docbook-pages.xml`, 1.6; `wordml/docbook.xml`, 1.17; `wordml/pages-normalise.xml`, 1.5; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.1; `wordml/template.dot`, 1.4; `wordml/template.xml`, 1.14; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.13 - Steve Ball
- added blocks stylesheet to support bibliographies, glossaries and qandaset
Modified: `wordml/Makefile`, 1.4; `wordml/README`, 1.3; `wordml/blocks-spec.xml`, 1.1; `wordml/docbook-pages.xml`, 1.5; `wordml/docbook.xml`, 1.16; `wordml/pages-normalise.xml`, 1.4; `wordml/sections-spec.xml`, 1.3; `wordml/specifications.xml`, 1.13; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.6; `wordml/template.dot`, 1.3; `wordml/template.xml`, 1.13; `wordml/wordml-blocks.xml`, 1.1; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.12; `wordml/wordml-sections.xml`, 1.3 - Steve Ball
- added `mediaobject caption`
Modified: `wordml/docbook-pages.xml`, 1.4; `wordml/docbook.xml`, 1.15; `wordml/specifications.xml`, 1.12; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.1; `wordml/template.dot`, 1.2; `wordml/template.xml`, 1.12; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.11 - Steve Ball
- added callouts
Modified: `wordml/docbook-pages.xml`, 1.3; `wordml/docbook.xml`, 1.14; `wordml/pages-normalise.xml`, 1.3; `wordml/specifications.xml`, 1.1; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.4; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.10 - Steve Ball
- added Word template file
Modified: `wordml/template.dot`, 1.1 - Steve Ball
- added `abstract`, fixed `itemizedlist`, `ulink`
Modified: `wordml/specifications.xml`, 1.10; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.9 - Steve Ball
- fixed Makefile added many features to Pages support added `revhistory`, `inlines`, `highlights`, `abstract`
Modified: `wordml/Makefile`, 1.2; `wordml/docbook-pages.xml`, 1.2; `wordml/pages-normalise.xml`, 1.2; `wordml/sections-spec.xml`, 1.2; `wordml/specifications.xml`, 1.9; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.3; `wordml/template.xml`, 1.11; `wordml/wordml-final.xml`, 1.8; `wordml/wordml-sections.xml`, 1.2 - Steve Ball
- fixed handling linebreaks when generating WordML added Apple Pages support
Modified: `wordml/docbook.xml`, 1.13; `wordml/template-pages.xml`, 1.2 - Steve Ball

20 Release 1.69.1

This release is a minor bug-fix update to the 1.69.0 release. Along with bug fixes, it includes one configuration-parameter change: The default value of the `annotation.support` parameter is now 0 (off). The reason for that change is that there have been reports that `annotation` handling is causing a significant performance degradation in processing of large documents with `xsltproc`.

21 Release 1.69.0

The release includes major feature changes, particularly in the **manpages stylesheets**, as well as a large number of bug fixes. As with all DocBook Project ‘dot zero’ releases, this is an **experimental release**.

21.1 Common

- This release adds localizations for the following languages: Albanian, Amharic, Azerbaijani, Hindi, Irish (Gaelic), Gujarati, Kannada, Mongolian, Oriya, Punjabi, Tagalog, Tamil, Welsh.
- Added support for specifying number format for auto labels for `chapter`, `appendix`, `part`, and `preface`. Contolled with the `appendix.autolabel`, `chapter.autolabel`, `part.autolabel`, and `preface.autolabel` parameters.
- Added basic support for `biblioref` cross referencing.
- Added support for align on `caption` in `mediaobject`.
- Added support for processing documents that use the DocBook V5 namespace.
- Added support for `termdef` and `mathphrase`.
- EXPERIMENTAL: Incorporated the Slides and Website stylesheets into the DocBook XSL stylesheets package. So, for example, Website documents can now be processed using the following URI for the driver Website `tabular.xml` file:

`http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/website/tabular.xml`

- A `procedure` without a `title` is now treated as an ‘informal’ procedure (meaning that it is not added to any generated ‘list of procedures’ and has no affect on numbering of generated labels for other procedures).
- `docname` is no longer added to `olink` when pointing to a root element.
- Added support for generation of choice separator in inline `simplelist`. This enables auto-generation of an appropriate localized ‘choice separator’ (for example, ‘and’ or ‘or’) before the final item in an inline `simplelist`.

To indicate that you want a choice separator generated for a particular list, you need to put a processing instruction (PI) of the form `<?dbchoice choice="foo"?>` as a child of the list. For example:

```
<para>Choose from  
ONE and ONLY ONE of the following:  
<simplelist type="inline">  
<?dbchoice choice="or" ?>  
<member>A</member>  
<member>B</member>  
<member>C</member>.</simplelist></para>
```

Output (for English):

Choose from ONE and only ONE of the following choices: A, B, or C.

As a temporary workaround for the fact that most of the DocBook non-English locale files don’t have a localization for the word ‘or’, you can put in a literal string to be used; example for French: `<?dbchoice choice="ou"?>`. That is, use ‘ou’ instead of ‘or’.

21.2 FO

- Added `content-type` property to `external-graphic` element, based on `imagedata` format attribute.
- Added support for generating `<rx:meta-field creator="$VERSION"/>` field for XEP output. This makes the DocBook XSL stylesheet version information available through the Document Properties menu in Acrobat Reader and other PDF viewers.
- Trademark symbol handling made consistent with handling of same in HTML stylesheets. Prior to this change, if you processed a document that contained no value for the class attribute on the `trademark` element, the HTML stylesheets would default to rendering a superscript TM symbol after the `trademark` contents, but the FO stylesheets would render nothing.
- Added support for generating XEP bookmarks for `refentry`.

- Added support for HTML markup `table border` attribute, applied to each table cell.
- The `table.width` template can now sum column specs if none use % or *.
- Added `fox:destination` extension inside `fox:outline` to support linking to internal destinations.
- Added support for customizing `abstract` with property sets. Controlled with the `abstract.properties` and `abstract-title.properties` parameters.
- Add `footnotes` in `table title` to table footnote set, and add support for table footnotes to HTML table markup.
- Added support for `title` in `glosslist`.
- Added support for `itemizedlist` symbol `none`.
- Implemented the new `graphical.admonition.properties` and `nongraphical.admonition.properties` attribute sets.
- Added `id` to `formalpara` and some other blocks that were missing it.
- Changed the anchor template to output `fo:inline` instead of `fo:wrapper`.
- Added support for `toc.max.depth` parameter.

21.3 Help

- Eclipse Help: Added support for generating olink database.

21.4 HTML

- Added a first cut at support in HTML output for DocBook 5 style annotations. Controlled using the `annotation.support` parameter, and implemented using JavaScript and CSS styling. For more details, see the documentation for the `annotation.js`, `annotation.css`, `annotation.graphic.open`, and `annotation.graphic.close` parameters.
- Generate client-side image map for `imageobjectco` with areas using `calspair` units
- Added support for `<?img.src.path?> PI`.
- Added support for passing `img.src.path` to DocBook Java XSLT image extensions when appropriate. Controlled using the `graphicsize.use.img.src.path` parameter.
- Added support for (not valid for DocBook 4) `xlink:href` on `area` and (not valid for DocBook 4) `alt` in `area`.
- Added new parameter `default.table.frame` to control table framing if there is no frame attribute on a table.
- Added initial, experimental support for generating content for the HTML `title` attribute from content of the `alt` element. This change adds support for the following inline elements only (none of them are block elements): `abbrev`, `accel`, `acronym`, `action`, `application`, `authorinitials`, `beginpage`, `citation`, `citerefentry`, `citetitle`, `city`, `classname`, `code`, `command`, `computeroutput`, `constant`, `country`, `database`, `email`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `errorname`, `errortext`, `errortype`, `exceptionname`, `fax`, `filename`, `firstname`, `firstterm`, `foreignphrase`, `function`, `glossterm`, `guibutton`, `guiicon`, `guilabel`, `guimenu`, `guimenuitem`, `guisubmenu`, `hardware`, `honorific`, `interface`, `interface-name`, `keycap`, `keycode`, `keysym`, `lineage`, `lineannotation`, `literal`, `markup`, `medialabel`, `methodname`, `mousebutton`, `option`, `optional`, `otheraddr`, `othername`, `package`, `parameter`, `personname`, `phone`, `pob`, `postcode`, `productname`, `productnumber`, `prompt`, `property`, `quote`, `refentrytitle`, `remark`, `replaceable`, `returnvalue`, `tag`, `shortcut`, `state`, `street`, `structfield`, `structname`, `subscript`, `superscript`, `surname`, `symbol`, `systemitem`, `tag`, `termdef`, `token`, `trademark`, `type`, `uri`, `userinput`, `varname`, `wordasword`
- Added support for chunking `revhistory` into separate file (similar to the support for doing same with `legalnotice`). Patch from Thomas Schraitle. Controlled through `new generate.revhistory.link` parameter.
- 110n.xsl: Made language codes RFC compliant. Added a new boolean config parameter, `110n.lang.value.rfc.compliant`. If it is non-zero (the default), any underscore in a language code will be converted to a hyphen in HTML output. If it is zero, the language code will be left as-is.

21.5 man

This release closes out 44 manpages stylesheet bug reports and feature requests. It adds more than 35 new configuration parameters for controlling aspects of man-page output -- including hyphenation and justification, handling of links, conversion of Unicode characters, and contents of man-page headers and footers.

- New options for globally disabling/enabling hyphenation and justification: `man.justify` and `man.hyphenate`.

Note that the default for the both of those is zero (off), because justified text looks good only when it is also hyphenated; to quote the ‘Hyphenation’ node from the groff info page:

Since the odds are not great for finding a set of words, for every output line, which fit nicely on a line without inserting excessive amounts of space between words, ‘groff’ hyphenates words so that it can justify lines without inserting too much space between words.

The problem is that groff can end up hyphenating a lot of things that you don’t want hyphenated (variable names and command names, for example). Keeping both justification and hyphenation disabled ensures that hyphens won’t get inserted where you don’t want to them, and you don’t end up with lines containing excessive amounts of space between words. These default settings run counter to how most existing man pages are formatted. But there are some notable exceptions, such as the perl man pages.

- Added parameters for controlling hyphenation of computer inlines, filenames, and URLs. By default, even when hyphenation is enabled (globally), hyphenation is now suppressed for "computer inlines" (currently, just `classname`, `constant`, `envar`, `errorcode`, `option`, `replaceable`, `userinput`, `type`, and `varname`, and for filenames, and for URLs from `link`. It can be (re)enabled using the `man.hyphenate.computer.inlines`, `man.hyphenate.filenames`, and `man.hyphenate.urls parameters`.
- Implemented a new system for replacing Unicode characters. There are two parts to the new system: a ‘string substitution map’ for doing ‘essential’ replacements, and a ‘character map’ that can optionally be disabled and enabled.

The new system fixes all open bugs that had to do with literal Unicode numbered entities such as `“`; and `”`; showing up in output, and greatly expands the ability of the stylesheets to generate ‘good’ roff equivalents for Unicode symbols and special characters.

Here are some details...

The previous manpages mechanism for replacing Unicode symbols and special characters with roff equivalents (the `replace-entities` template) was not scalable and not complete. The mechanism handled a somewhat arbitrary selection of less than 20 or so Unicode characters. But there are potentially more than 800 Unicode special characters that have some groff equivalent they can be mapped to. And there are about 34 symbols in the Latin-1 (ISO-8859-1) block alone. Users might reasonably expect that if they include any of those Latin-1 characters in their DocBook source documents, they will get correctly converted to known roff equivalents in output.

In addition to those common symbols, certain users may have a need to use symbols from other Unicode blocks. Say, somebody who is documenting an application related to math might need to use a bunch of symbols from the ‘Mathematical Operators’ Unicode block (there are about 65 characters in that block that have reasonable roff equivalents). Or somebody else might really like Dingbats -- such as the checkmark character -- and so might use a bunch of things from the ‘Dingbat’ block (141 characters in that that have roff equivalents or that can at least be ‘degraded’ somewhat gracefully into roff).

So, the old `replace-entities` mechanism was replaced with a completely different mechanism that is based on use of two ‘maps’: a ‘substitution map’ and a ‘character map’ (the latter in a format compliant with the XSLT 2.0 spec and therefore completely ‘forward compatible’ with XSLT 2.0).

The substitution map is controlled through the `man.string.subst.map` parameter, and is used to replace things like the backslash character (which needs special handling to prevent it from being interpreted as a roff escape). The substitution map cannot be disabled, because disabling it will cause the output to be broken. However, you can add to it and change it if needed.

The ‘character map’ mechanism, on the other hand, can be completely disabled. It is enabled by default, and, by default, does replacement of all Latin-1 symbols, along with most special spaces, dashes, and quotes (about 75 characters by default). Also, you can optionally enable a ‘full’ character map that provides support for converting all 800 or so of the characters that have some reasonable groff equivalent.

The character-map mechanism is controlled through the following parameters:

man.charmap.enabled

turns character-map support on/off

man.charmap.use.subset

specifies that a subset of the character map is used instead of the full map

man.charmap.subset.profile

specifies profile of character-map subset

man.charmap.uri

specifies an alternate character map to use instead of the ‘standard’ character map provided in the distribution

- Implemented out-of-line handling of display of URLs for links (currently, only for `ulink`). This gives you three choices for handling of links:
 1. Number and list links. Each link is numbered inline, with a number in square brackets preceding the link contents, and a numbered list of all links is added to the end of the document.
 2. Only list links. Links are not numbered, but an (unnumbered) list of links is added to the end of the document.
 3. Suppress links. Don’t number links and don’t add any list of links to the end of the document.

You can also choose whether links should be underlined. The default is ‘the works’ -- list, number, and underline links. You can use the *man.links.list.enabled*, *man.links.are.numbered*, and *man.links.are.underlined* parameters to change the defaults. The default heading for the link list is REFERENCES. You can change that using the *man.links.list.heading* parameter.

- Changed default output encoding to UTF-8. **This does not mean that man pages are output in raw UTF-8**, because the character map is applied before final output, causing all UTF-8 characters covered in the map to be converted to roff equivalents.
- Added support for processing `refsect3` and `formalpara` and nested `refsection` elements, down to any arbitrary level of nesting.
- Output of the NAME and SYNOPSIS and AUTHOR headings and the headings for admonitions (`note`, `caution`, etc.) are no longer hard-coded for English. Instead, headings are generated for those in the correct locale (just as the FO and HTML stylesheets do).
- Re-worked mechanism for assembling page headers/footers (the contents of the `.TH` macro ‘title line’).

Here are some details...

All man pages contain a `.TH` roff macro whose contents are used for rendering the ‘title line’ displayed in the header and footer of each page. Here are a couple of examples of real-world man pages that have useful page headers/footers:

<code>gtk-options(7)</code>	GTK+ User’s Manual	<code>gtk-options(7) <-- header</code>
GTK+ 1.2	2003-10-20	<code>gtk-options(7) <-- footer</code>
<code>svglib(7)</code>	Svgalib User Manual	<code>svglib(7) <-- header</code>
Svgalib 1.4.1	16 December 1999	<code>svglib(7) <-- footer</code>

And here are the terms with which the `groff_man(7)` man page refers to the various parts of the header/footer:

<code>title(section)</code>	<code>extra3</code>	<code>title(section)</code>	<code><- header</code>
<code>extra2</code>	<code>extra1</code>	<code>title(section)</code>	<code><- footer</code>

Or, using the names with which the `man(7)` man page refers to those same fields:

<code>title(section)</code>	<code>manual</code>	<code>title(section)</code>	<code><- page header</code>
<code>source</code>	<code>date</code>	<code>title(section)</code>	<code><- page footer</code>

The easiest way to control the contents of those fields is to mark up your `refentry` content like the following (note that this is a ‘minimal’ example).

```
<refentry>
  <info>
    <date>2003-10-20</date> ❶
  </info>
  <refmeta>
    <refentrytitle>gtk-options</refentrytitle> ❷
    <manvolnum>7</manvolnum> ❸
    <refmiscinfo class="source-name">GTK+</refmiscinfo> ❹
    <refmiscinfo class="version">1.2</refmiscinfo> ❺
    <refmiscinfo class="manual">GTK+ User's Manual</refmiscinfo> ❻
  </refmeta>
  <refnamediv>
    <refname>gtk-options</refname>
    <refpurpose>Standard Command Line Options for GTK+ Programs</refpurpose>
  </refnamediv>
  <refsect1>
    <title>Description</title>
    <para>This manual page describes the command line options, which
      are common to all GTK+ based applications.</para>
  </refsect1>
</refentry>
```

- ❶ Sets the ‘date’ part of the header/footer.
- ❷ Sets the ‘title’ part.
- ❸ Sets the ‘section’ part.
- ❹ Sets the ‘source name’ part.
- ❺ Sets the ‘version’ part.
- ❻ Sets the ‘manual’ part.

Below are explanations of the steps the stylesheets take to attempt to assemble and display ‘good’ headers and footer. [In the descriptions, note that **info* is the *refentry* ‘info’ child (whatever its name), and *parentinfo* is the ‘info’ child of its parent (again, whatever its name).]

extra1 field (date)

Content of the ‘extra1’ field is what shows up in the **center footer** position of each page. The `man(7)` man page describes it as ‘the date of the last revision’.

To provide this content, if the `refentry.date.profile.enabled` is non-zero, the stylesheets check the value of `refentry.date.profile`.

Otherwise, by default, they check for a `date` or `pubdate` not only in the **info* contents, but also in the *parentinfo* contents.

If a date cannot be found, the stylesheets now automatically generate a localized ‘long format’ date, ensuring that this field always has content in output.

However, if for some reason you want to suppress this field, you can do so by setting a non-zero value for `man.th.extra1.suppress`.

extra2 field (source)

On Linux systems and on systems with a modern groff, the content of the ‘extra2’ field are what shows up in the **left footer** position of each page.

The `man(7)` man page describes this as ‘the source of the command’, and provides the following examples:

- For binaries, use something like: GNU, NET-2, SLS Distribution, MCC Distribution.
- For system calls, use the version of the kernel that you are currently looking at: Linux 0.99.11.
- For library calls, use the source of the function: GNU, BSD 4.3, Linux DLL 4.4.1.

In practice, there are many pages that simply have a version number in the ‘source’ field. So, it looks like what we have is a two-part field, *Name Version*, where:

Name

product name (e.g., BSD) or org. name (e.g., GNU)

Version

version name

Each part is optional. If the *Name* is a product name, then the *Version* is probably the version of the product. Or there may be no *Name*, in which case, if there is a *Version*, it is probably the version of the item itself, not the product it is part of. Or, if the *Name* is an organization name, then there probably will be no *Version*.

To provide this content, if the *refentry.source.name.profile.enabled* and *refentry.version.profile.enabled* parameter are non-zero, the stylesheets check the value of *refentry.source.name.profile* *refentry.version.profile*.

Otherwise, by default, they check the following places, in the following order:

1. **info/productnumber*
2. **info/productnumber*
3. *refmeta/refmiscinfo*[@class = 'version']
4. *parentinfo/productnumber*
5. **info/productname*
6. *parentinfo/productname*
7. *refmeta/refmiscinfo*
8. [nothing found, so leave it empty]

extra3 field

On Linux systems and on systems with a modern groff, the content of the 'extra3' field are what shows up in the **center header** position of each page. Some man pages have 'extra2' content, some don't. If a particular man page has it, it is most often 'context' data about some larger system the documented item belongs to (for example, the name or description of a group of related applications). The stylesheets now check the following places, in the following order, to look for content to add to the 'extra3' field.

1. *parentinfo/title*
2. parent's title
3. *refmeta/refmiscinfo*
4. [nothing found, so leave it empty]

- Reworked **info* gathering. For each *refentry* found, the stylesheets now cache its **info* content, then check for any valid parent of it that might have *metainfo* content and cache that, if found; they then then do all further matches against those node-sets (rather than re-selecting the original **info* nodes each time they are needed).
- New option for breaking strings after forward slashes. This enables long URLs and pathnames to be broken across lines. Controlled through *man.break.after.slash* parameter.
- Output for servicemark and trademark are now (SM) and (TM). There is a groff "\ (tm" escape, but output from that is not acceptable.
- New option for controlling the length of the title part of the .TH title line. Controlled through the *man.th.title.max.length* parameter.
- New option for specifying output encoding of each man page; controlled with *man.output.encoding* (similar to the HTML *chunker.output.encoding* parameter).
- New option for suppressing filename messages when generating output; controlled with *man.output.quietly* (similar to the HTML *chunk.quietly* parameter).
- The text of cross-references to first-level *refentry* (*refsect1*, top-level *refsection*, *refnamediv*, and *refsynopsisdiv*) are now capitalized.
- Cross-references to *refnamediv* now use the localized NAME title instead of using the first *refname* child. This makes the output inconsistent with HTML and FO output, but for man-page output, it seems to make better sense to have the NAME. (It may actually make better sense to do it that way in HTML and FO output as well...)
- Added support for processing *funcparams*.

- Removed the space that was being output between `funcdef` and `paramdef`; example: was: `float rand (void)`; now: `float rand(void)`
- Turned off bold formatting for the `type` element when it occurs within a `funcdef` or `paramdef`
- Corrected rendering of `simplelist`. Any `<simplelist type="inline"` instance is now rendered as a comma-separated list (also with an optional localized ‘and’ or ‘or’ before the last item -- see description elsewhere in these release notes). Any `simplelist` instance whose type is not `inline` is rendered as a one-column vertical list (ignoring the values of the `type` and `columns` attributes if present)
- Comment added at top of roff source for each page now includes DocBook XSL stylesheets version number (as in the HTML stylesheets)
- Made change to prevent ‘sticky’ fonts changes. Now, when the manpages stylesheets encounter node sets that need to be boldfaced or italicized, they put the `\fBfoo\fR` and `\fIbar\fR` groff bold/italic instructions separately around each node in the set.
- `synop.xsl`: Boldface everything in `functsynopsis` output except parameters (which are in ital). The `man(7)` man page says:

For functions, the arguments are always specified using italics, even in the SYNOPSIS section, where the rest of the function is specified in bold.

A look through the contents of the `man/man2` directory shows that most (all) existing pages do follow this ‘everything in `functsynopsis` bold’ rule. That means the `type` content and any punctuation (parens, semicolons, `varargs`) also must be bolded.

- Removed code for adding backslashes before periods/dots in roff source, because backslashes in front of periods/dots in roff source are needed only in the very rare case where a period is the very first character in a line, without any space in front of it. A better way to deal with that rare case is for you to add a zero-width space in front of the offending dot(s) in your source
- Removed special handling of the `quote` element. That was hard-coded to cause anything marked up with the `quote` element to be output preceded by two backticks and followed by two apostrophes -- that is, that old-school kludge for generating ‘curly’ quotes in Emacs and in X-Windows fonts. While Emacs still seems to support that, I don’t think X-Windows has for a long time now. And, anyway, it looks (and has always looked) like crap when viewed on a normal tty/console. In addition, it breaks localization of `quote`. By default, `quote` content is output with localized quotation marks, which, depending on the locale, may or may not be left and right double quotation marks.
- Changed mappings for left and right single quotation marks. Those had previously been incorrectly mapped to the backtick (```) and apostrophe (`&39;`) characters (for kludgy reasons -- see above). They are now correctly mapped to the `\(oq` and `\(cq` roff escapes. If you want the old (broken) behavior, you need to manually change the mappings for those in the value of the `man.string.subst.map` parameter.
- Removed `xref.xsl` file. Now, of the various cross-reference elements, only the `ulink` element is handled differently; the rest are handled exactly as the HTML stylesheets handle them, except that no hypertext links are generated. (Because there is no equivalent hypertext mechanism in man pages.)
- New option for making ‘subheading dividers’ in generated roff source. The dividers are not visible in the rendered man page; they are just there to make the source readable. Controlled using `man.subheading.divider`.
- Fixed many places where too much space was being added between lines.

22 Release 1.68.1

The release adds localization support for Farsi (thanks to Sina Heshmati) and improved support for the XLink-based DocBook NG `db:link` element. Other than that, it is a minor bug-fix update to the 1.68.0 release. The main thing it fixes is a build error that caused the XSLT Java extensions to be jarred up with the wrong package structure. Thanks to Jens Stavnstrup for quickly reporting the problem, and to Mauritz Jeanson for investigating and finding the cause.

23 Release 1.68.0

This release includes some features changes, particularly for FO/PDF output, and a number of bug fixes.

FO

- Moved footnote properties to attribute-sets.
- Added support for side floats, margin notes, and custom floats.
- Added new parameters *body.start.indent* and *body.end.indent* to the *set.flow.properties* template.
- Added support for *xml:id*
- Added support for *refdescriptor*.
- Added support for multiple *refnamedivs*.
- Added *index.entry.properties* attribute-set to support customization of index entries.
- Added *set.flow.properties* template call to each *fo:flow* to support customizations entry point.
- Add support for *@floatstyle* in *figure*
- Moved hardcoded properties for index division titles to the *index.div.title.properties* attribute-set.
- Added support for *table-layout="auto"* for XEP.
- Added *index.div.title.properties* attribute-set.
- *\$verbose* parameter is now passed to most elements.
- Added *refentry* to *toc* in part, as it is permitted by the DocBook schema/DTD.
- Added backmatter elements and *article* to *toc* in part, since they are permitted by the DocBook schema/DTD.
- Added *mode="toc"* for *simplesect*, since it is now permitted in the *toc* if *simplesect.in.toc* is set.
- Moved hard-coded properties to *nongraphical.admonition.properties* and *graphical.admonition.properties* attribute sets.
- Added support for *sidebar-width* and *float-type* processing instructions in *sidebar*.
- For tables with HTML markup elements, added support for *dbfo bgcolor* PI, the attribute-sets named *table.properties*, *informaltable.properties*, *table.table.properties*, and *table.cell.padding*. Also added support for the templates named *table.cell.properties* and *table.cell.block.properties* so that *tabstyles* can be implemented. Also added support for tables containing only *tr* instead of *tbody* with *tr*.
- Added new parameter *hyphenate.verbatim.characters* which can specify characters after which a line break can occur in verbatim environments. This parameter can be used to extend the initial set of characters which contain only space and non-breakable space.
- Added *itemizedlist.label.markup* to enable selection of different bullet symbol. Also added several potential bullet characters, commented out by default.
- Enabled all *id*'s in XEP output for external olinking.

HTML

- Added support for *refdescriptor*.
- Added support for multiple *refnamedivs*.
- Added support for *xml:id*
- *refsynopsisdiv* as a section for counting section levels

IMAGES

- Added new SVG admonition graphics and navigation images.

24 Release 1.67.2

This release fixes a table bug introduced in the 1.67.1 release.

25 Release 1.67.1

This release includes a number of bug fixes.

The following lists provide details about API and feature changes.

FO

- Tables: Inherited cell properties are now passed to the `table.cell.properties` template so they can be overridden by a customization.
- Tables: Added support for bgcolor PI on table row element.
- TOCs: Added new parameter `simplesect.in.toc`; default value of 0 causes simplesect to be omitted from TOCs; to cause simplesect to be included in TOCs, you must set the value of `simplesect.in.toc` to 1. Comment from Norm:

Simplesect elements aren't supposed to appear in the ToC at all... The use case for simplesect is when, for example, every chapter in a book ends with "Exercises" or "For More Information" sections and you don't want those to appear in the ToC.

- Sections: Reverted change that caused a variable reference to be used in a template match and rewrote code to preserve intended semantics.
- Lists: Added workaround to prevent "* 0.60 + 1em" garbage in list output from PassiveTeX
- Moved the literal attributes from `component.title` to the `component.title.properties` attribute-set so they can be customized.
- Lists: Added glossdef's first para to special handling in `fo:list-item-body`.

HTML

- TOCs: Added new parameter `simplesect.in.toc`; for details, see the list of **FO** changes for this release.
- Indexing: Added new parameter `index.prefer.titleabbrev`; when set to 1, index references will use `titleabbrev` instead of `title` when available.

HTML HELP

- Added support for generating windows-1252-encoded output using Saxon; for more details, see the list of **XSL Java extensions** changes for this release.

MAN PAGES

- Replaced named/numeric character-entity references for non-breaking space with groff equivalent (backslash-tilde).

XSL JAVA EXTENSIONS

- Saxon extensions: Added the `Windows1252` class. It extends Saxon 6.5.x with the windows-1252 character set, which is particularly useful when generating HTML Help for Western European Languages (code from Pontus Haglund and contributed to the DocBook community by Sectra AB, Sweden).

To use:

1. Make sure that the Saxon 6.5.x jar file and the jar file for the DocBook XSL Java extensions are in your CLASSPATH

2. Create a DocBook XSL customization layer -- a file named `mystylesheet.xml` or whatever -- that, at a minimum, contains the following:

```
<xsl:stylesheet
  xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
  version='1.0'>
  <xsl:import href="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/htmlhelp/ ↵
    htmlhelp.xml"/>
  <xsl:output method="html" encoding="WINDOWS-1252" indent="no"/>
  <xsl:param name="htmlhelp.encoding" select="'WINDOWS-1252'"/></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="chunker.output.encoding" select="'WINDOWS-1252'"/></xsl:param>
  <xsl:param name="saxon.character.representation" select="'native'"/></xsl:param>
</xsl:stylesheet>
```

Invoke Saxon with the `encoding.windows-1252` Java system property set to `com.nwalsh.saxon.Windows1252`; for example

```
java \
  -Dencoding.windows-1252=com.nwalsh.saxon.Windows1252 \
  com.icl.saxon.StyleSheet \
  mydoc.xml mystylesheet.xml
```

Or, for a more complete "real world" case showing other options you'll typically want to use:

```
java \
  -Dencoding.windows-1252=com.nwalsh.saxon.Windows1252 \
  -Djavax.xml.parsers.DocumentBuilderFactory=org.apache.xerces.jaxp. ↵
    DocumentBuilderFactoryImpl \
  -Djavax.xml.parsers.SAXParserFactory=org.apache.xerces.jaxp.SAXParserFactoryImpl \
  -Djavax.xml.transform.TransformerFactory=com.icl.saxon.TransformerFactoryImpl \
  com.icl.saxon.StyleSheet \
  -x org.apache.xml.resolver.tools.ResolvingXMLReader \
  -y org.apache.xml.resolver.tools.ResolvingXMLReader \
  -r org.apache.xml.resolver.tools.CatalogResolver \
  mydoc.xml mystylesheet.xml
```

In both cases, the "mystylesheet.xml" file should be a DocBook customization layer containing the parameters show in step 2.

- Saxon extensions: Removed Saxon 8 extensions from release package

26 Release 1.67.0

- A number of important bug fixes.
- Added Saxon8 extensions
- Enabled `dbfo table-width on entrytbl` in FO output
- Added support for `role=strong on emphasis` in FO output
- Added new FO parameter `hyphenate.verbatim` that can be used to turn on "intelligent" wrapping of verbatim environments.
- Replaced all `<tt></tt>` output with `<code></code>`
- Changed `admon.graphic.width` template to a mode so that different admonitions can have different graphical widths.
- Deprecated the HTML `shade.verbatim` parameter (use CSS instead)
- Wrapped ToC `refentrytitle/refname` and `refpurpose` in span with class values. This makes it possible to style them using a CSS stylesheet.
- Use `strong/em` instead of `b/i` in HTML output

- Added support for converting `Emphasis` to groff italic and `Emphasis role='bold'` to bold. Controlled by `emphasis-propagates.style` param, but not documented yet using litprog system. Will do that next (planning to add some other parameter-controllable options for hyphenation and handling of line spacing).
- `callout.graphics.number.limit.xml` param: Changed the default from 10 to 15.
- `verbatim.properties`: Added `hyphenate=false`
- Saxon and Xalan Text.java extensions: Added support for `URIResolver()` on insertfile href's
- Added generated `RELEASE-NOTES.txt` file.
- Added `INSTALL` file (executable file for generating catalog.xml)
- Removed obsolete `tools` directory from package

27 Release 1.66.1

- A number of important bug fixes.
- Now `xml:base` attributes that are generated by an XInclude processor are resolved for image files.
- Rewrote olink templates to support several new features.
 - Extended full olink support to FO output.
 - Add support for `xrefstyle` attribute in olinks.
 - New parameters to support new olink features: `insert.olink.page.number`, `insert.olink.pdf.frag`, `olink.debug`, `olink.lang.fallback.sequence`, `olink.properties`, `prefer.internal.olink`. See the reference page for each parameter for more information.
- Added `index.on.type` parameter for new type attribute introduced in DocBook 4.3 for indexterms and index. This allows you to create multiple indices containing different categories of entries. For users of 4.2 and earlier, you can use the new parameter `index.on.role` instead.
- Added new `section.autolabel.max.depth` parameter to turn off section numbering below a certain depth. This permits you to number major section levels and leave minor section levels unnumbered.
- Added `footnote.sep.leader.properties` attribute set to format the line separating footnotes in printed output.
- Added parameter `img.src.path` as a prefix to HTML `img src` attributes. The prefix is added to whatever path is already generated by the stylesheet for each image file.
- Added new attribute-sets `informalequation.properties`, `informalexample.properties`, `informalfigure.properties`, and `informaltable.properties`, so each such element type can be formatted individually if needed.
- Add `component.label.includes.part.label` parameter to add any part number to chapter, appendix and other component labels when the `label.from.part` parameter is nonzero. This permits you to distinguish multiple chapters with the same chapter number in cross references and the TOC.
- Added `chunk.separate.lots` parameter for HTML output. This parameter lets you generate separate chunk files for each LOT (list of tables, list of figures, etc.).
- Added several table features:
 - Added `table.table.properties` attribute set to add properties to the `fo:table` element.
 - Added placeholder templates named `table.cell.properties` and `table.cell.block.properties` to enable adding properties to any `fo:table-cell` or the cell's `fo:block`, respectively. These templates are a start for implementing table styles.
- Added new attribute set `component.title.properties` for easy modifications of component's title formatting in FO output.

- Added Saxon support for an encoding attribute on the `textdata` element. Added new parameter `textdata.default.encoding` which specifies encoding when encoding attribute on `textdata` is missing.
 - Template `label.this.section` now controls whole section label, not only sub-label which corresponds to particular label. Former behaviour was IMHO bug as it was not usable.
 - Formatting in `titleabbrev` for TOC and headers is preserved when there are no hotlink elements in the title. Formerly the title showed only the text of the title, no font changes or other markup.
 - Added `intial.page.number` template to set the `initial-page-number` property for page sequences in print output. Customizing this template lets you change when page numbering restarts. This is similar to the `format.page.number` template that lets you change how the page number formatting changes in the output.
 - Added `force.page.count` template to set the `force-page-count` property for page sequences in print output. This is similar to the `format.page.number` template.
 - Sort language for localized index sorting in `autoidx-ng.xml` is now taken from document `lang`, not from system environment.
 - Numbering and formatting of normal and ulink footnotes (if turned on) has been unified. Now ulink footnotes are mixed in with any other footnotes.
 - Added support for `renderas` attribute in `section` and `sect1` et al. This permits you to render a given section title as if it were a different level.
 - Added support for `label` attribute in footnote to manually supply the footnote mark.
 - Added support for DocBook 4.3 `corpcredit` element.
 - Added support for a `dbfo keep-together` PI for formal objects (table, figure, example, equation, programlisting). That permits a formal object to be kept together if it is not already, or to be broken if it is very long and the default keep-together is not appropriate.
 - For graphics files, made file extension matching case insensitive, and updated the list of graphics extensions.
 - Allow `calloutlist` to have block content before the first callout
 - Added `dbfo-need` processing instruction to provide soft page breaks.
 - Added implementation of existing but unused `default.image.width` parameter for graphics.
 - Support DocBook NG `tag` inline element.
 - It appears that XEP now supports Unicode characters in bookmarks. There is no further need to strip accents from characters.
 - Make `segmentedlist` HTML markup more semantic and available to CSS styles.
 - Added `user.preroot` placeholder template to permit `xsl-stylesheet` and other PIs and comments to be output before the HTML root element.
 - Non-chunked `legalnotice` now gets an `` element in HTML output so it can be referenced with `xref` or `link`.
 - In chunked HTML output, changed `link rel="home"` to `rel="start"`, and `link rel="previous"` to `rel="prev"`, per W3C HTML 4.01 spec.
 - Added several patches to `htmlhelp` from W. Borgert
 - Added Bosnian locale file as `common/bs.xml`.
-

28 Release 1.65.0

- A number of important bug fixes.
- Added a workaround to allow these stylesheets to process DocBook NG documents. (It's a hack that pre-processes the document to strip off the namespace and then uses `exsl:node-set` to process the result.)
- Added alternative indexing mechanism which has better internationalization support. New indexing method allows grouping of accented letters like e, é, ë into the same group under letter "e". It can also treat special letters (e.g. "ch") as one character and place them in the correct position (e.g. between "h" and "i" in Czech language).

In order to use this mechanism you must create customization layer which imports some base stylesheet (like `fo/docbook.xsl`, `html/chunk.xsl`) and then includes appropriate stylesheet with new indexing code (`fo/autoidx-ng.xsl` or `html/autoidx-ng.xsl`). For example:

```
<xsl:stylesheet xmlns:xsl="http://www.w3.org/1999/XSL/Transform"
                version="1.0">

<xsl:import href="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/fo/docbook.xsl"/>
<xsl:include href="http://docbook.sourceforge.net/release/xsl/current/fo/autoidx-ng.xsl"/>

</xsl:stylesheet>
```

New method is known to work with Saxon and it should also work with `xsltproc 1.1.1` and later. Currently supported languages are English, Czech, German, French, Spanish and Danish.

29 Release 1.64.1

General bug fixes and improvements. Sorry about the failure to produce an updated release notes file for 1.62.0—1.63.2

- In the course of fixing bug #849787, wrapping Unicode callouts with an appropriate font change in the Xalan extensions, I discovered that the Xalan APIs have changed a bit. So `xalan2.jar` will work with older Xalan 2 implementations, `xalan25.jar` works with Xalan 2.5.

30 Release 1.61.0

Lots of bug fixes and improvements.

- Initial support for timestamp PI. From now you can use `<?dbtimestamp format="Y-m-d H:M:S"?>` to get current datetime in your document. Added localization support for datetime PI
- Added level 6 to test for `section` depth in `section.level` template so that `section.title.level6.properties` will be used for sections that are 6 deep or deeper. This should also cause a `h6` to be created in html output.
- Don't use SVG graphics if `use.svg=0`
- Now uses `number-and-title-template` for sections only if `section.autolabel` is not zero.
- Added missing 'english-language-name' attribute to the `l10n` element, and the missing 'style' attribute to the template element so the current gentext documents will validate.
- Corrected several references to parameter `qanda.defaultlabel` that were missing the "\$".
- Now accepts `admon.textlabel` parameter to turn off Note, Warning, etc. label.
- FeatReq #684561: support more XEP metadata
- Added hyphenation support. Added support for `coref`. Added `beginpage` support. (does nothing; see TDG).

- Added support for hyphenation-character, hyphenation-push-character-count, and hyphenation-remain-character-count
- Added `root.properties`, `ebnf.assignment`, and `ebnf.statement.terminator`
- Support bgcolor PI in table cells; make sure rowsep and colsep don't have any effect on the last row or column
- Handle `othercredit` on titlepage a little better
- Applied fix from Jeff Beal that fixed the bug that put secondary page numbers on primary entries. Same with tertiary page numbers on secondary entries.
- Added definition of missing variable `collection`.
- Make `footnote` formatting 'normal' even when it occurs in a context that has special formatting
- Added warning when `glossary.collection` is not blank, but it cannot open the specified file.
- Pick up the frame attribute on `table` and `informaltable`.
- `indexdiv/title` in non-autogenerated indexes are now picked up.
- Removed (unused) `component.title.properties`
- Move IDs from page-sequences down to titlepage blocks
- Use `proportional-column-width(1)` on more `tables`.
Use `proportional-column-width()` for header/footer tables; suppress `relative-align` when using FOP
- Check for `glossterm.auto.link` when linking firstterms; don't output `gl. prefix` on glossterm links
- Generate Part ToCs
- Support `glossary`, `bibliography`, and `index` in component ToCs.
- Refactored chunking code so that customization of chunk algorithm and chunk elements is more practical
- Support `textobject/phrase` on `inlinemediaobject`.
- Support 'start' PI on ordered lists
- Fixed test of `$toc` PI to turn on `qandaset` TOC.
- Added `process.chunk.footnotes` to `sect2` through `5` to fix bug of missing footnotes when chunk level greater than 1.
- Added parameter `toc.max.depth` which controls maximal depth of ToC as requested by PHP-DOC group.
- Exempted `titleabbrev` from preamble processing in lists, and fixed `variablelist` preamble code to use the same syntax as the other lists.
- Added support for elements between `variablelist` and first `varlistentry` since DocBook 4.2 supports that now.

31 Release 1.60.1

Lots of bug fixes.

- The format of the `titlepage.templates.xml` files and the stylesheet that transforms them have been significantly changed. All of the attributes used to control the templates are now namespace qualified. So what used to be:

```
<t:titlepage element="article" wrapper="fo:block">
```

is now:

```
<t:titlepage t:element="article" t:wrapper="fo:block">
```

Attributes from other namespaces (including those that are unqualified) are now copied directly through. In practice, this means that the names that used to be ‘fo:’ qualified:

```
<title named-template="component.title"
  param:node="ancestor-or-self::article[1]"
  fo:text-align="center"
  fo:keep-with-next="always"
  fo:font-size="&hsize5;"
  fo:font-weight="bold"
  fo:font-family="{ $title.font.family }"/>
```

are now unqualified:

```
<title t:named-template="component.title"
  param:node="ancestor-or-self::article[1]"
  text-align="center"
  keep-with-next="always"
  font-size="&hsize5;"
  font-weight="bold"
  font-family="{ $title.font.family }"/>
```

The `t:titlepage` and `t:titlepage-content` elements both generate wrappers now. And unqualified attributes on those elements are passed through. This means that you can now make the title font apply to an entire titlepage and make the entire ‘recto’ titlepage centered by specifying the font and alignment on those elements:

```
<t:titlepage t:element="article" t:wrapper="fo:block"
  font-family="{ $title.font.family }">

  <t:titlepage-content t:side="recto"
    text-align="center">
```

- Support use of `titleabbrev` in running headers and footers.
- Added (experimental) `xref.with.number.and.title` parameter to enable number/title cross references even when the default would be just the number.
- Generate part ToCs if they’re requested.
- Use `proportional-column-width()` in header/footer tables.
- Handle alignment correctly when `screenshot` wraps a graphic in a figure.
- Format chapter and appendix cross references consistently.
- Attempt to support tables with multiple `tgroups` in FO.
- Output `fo:table-columns` in `simplelist` tables.
- Use `titlepage.templates.xml` for `indexdiv` and `glossdiv` formatting.
- Improve support for new bibliography elements.
- Added `footnote.number.format`, `table.footnote.number.format`, `footnote.number.symbols`, and `table.footnote.number.symbols` for better control of footnote markers.
- Added `glossentry.show.acronyms`.
- Suppress the draft-mode page masters when `draft-mode` is ‘no’.
- Make blank pages verso not recto. D’Oh!
- Improved formatting of `ulink` footnotes.
- Fixed bugs in graphic width/height calculations.

- Added class attributes to inline elements.
- Don't add '.html' to the filenames identified with the 'dbhtml' PI.
- Don't force a ToC when sections contain *refentry*s.
- Make section title sizes a function of the *body.master.size*.

32 Release 1.59.2

The 1.59.2 fixes an FO bug in the page masters that causes FOP to fail.

- Removed the region-name from the region-body of blank pages. There's no reason to give the body of blank pages a unique name and doing so causes a mismatch that FOP detects.
- Output IDs for the first paragraphs in listitems.
- Fixed some small bugs in the handling of page numbers in double-sided mode.
- Attempt to prevent duplicated IDs from being produced when endterm on *xref* points to something with nested structure.
- Fix alignment problems in *equations*.
- Output the type attribute on unordered lists (UL) in HTML only if the *css.decoration* parameter is true.
- Calculate the font size in *formal.title.properties* so that it's 1.2 times the base font size, not a fixed "12pt".

33 Release 1.59.1

The 1.59.1 fixes a few bugs.

- Added Bulgarian localization.
 - Indexing improvements; localize book indexes to books but allow *setindex* to index an entire set.
 - The default value for *rowsep* and *colsep* is now "1" as per CALS.
 - Added support for *titleabbrev* (use them for cross references).
 - Improvements to *mediaobject* for selecting print vs. online images.
 - Added separate property sets for *figures*, *examples*, *equations*, *tabless*, and *procedures*.
 - Make *lineannotations* italic.
 - Support *xrefstyle* attribute.
 - Make endterm on *xref* higher priority than *xreflabel* target.
 - Glossary formatting improvements.
-

34 Release 1.58.0

The 1.58.0 adds some initial support for extensions in xsltproc, adds a few features, and fixes bugs.

- This release contains the first attempt at extension support for xsltproc. The only extension available to date is the one that adjusts table column widths. Run `extensions/xsltproc/python/xslt.py`.
- Fixed bugs in calculation of adjusted column widths to correct for rounding errors.
- Support nested `refsection` elements correctly.
- Reworked `gentext.template` to take context into consideration. The name of elements in localization files is now an xpath-like context list, not just a simple name.
- Made some improvements to bibliography formatting.
- Improved graphical formatting of admonitions.
- Added support for `entrytbl`.
- Support spanning index terms.
- Support `bibliosource`.

35 Release 1.57.0

- The 1.57.0 release wasn't documented here. Oops.

36 Release 1.56.0

The 1.56.0 release fixes bugs.

- Reworked chunking. *This will break all existing customizations layers that change the chunking algorithm.* If you're customizing chunking, look at the new 'content' parameter that's passed to `process-chunk-element` and friends.
 - Support continued and inherited numeration in `orderedlist` formatting for FOs.
 - Added Thai localization.
 - Tweaked stylesheet documentation stylesheets to link to TDG and the parameter references.
 - Allow title on tables of contents ("Table of Contents") to be optional. Added new keyword to `generate.toc`. Support tables of contents on sections.
 - Made separate parameters for table borders and table cell borders: `table.frame.border.color`, `table.frame.border.style`, `table.frame.border.thickness`, `table.cell.border.color`, `table.cell.border.style`, and `table.cell.border.thickness`.
 - Suppress formatting of 'endofrange' `indexterms`. This is only half-right. They should generate a range, but I haven't figured out how to do that yet.
 - Support `revdescription`. (Bug #582192)
 - Added `default.float.class` and fixed figure floats. (Bug #497603)
 - Fixed formatting of `sbr` in FOs.
 - Added context to the 'missing template' error message.
-

- Process `arg` correctly in a `group`. (Bug #605150)
- Removed 'keep-with-next' from `formal.title.properties` attribute set now that the stylesheets support the option of putting such titles below the object. Now the `$placement` value determines if 'keep-with-next' or 'keep-with-previous' is used in the title block.
- Wrap `'url()'` around external-destinations when appropriate.
- Fixed typo in compact list spacing. (Bug #615464)
- Removed spurious hash in anchor name. (Bug #617717)
- Address is now displayed verbatim on title pages. (Bug #618600)
- The `bridgehead.in.toc` parameter is now properly supported.
- Improved effectiveness of HTML cleanup by increasing the number of places where it is used. Improve use of HTML cleanup in XHTML stylesheets.
- Support table of contents for appendix in article. (Bug #596599)
- Don't duplicate footnotes in `bibliographys` and `glossarys`. (Bug #583282)
- Added `default.image.width`. (Bug #516859)
- Totally reworked `funcsynopsis` code; it now supports a 'tabular' presentation style for 'wide' prototypes; see `funcsynopsis.tabular.threshold`. (HTML only right now, I think, FO support, uh, real soon now.)
- Reworked support for difference marking; toned down the colors a bit and added a 'system.head.content' template so that the diff CSS wasn't overriding 'user.head.content'. (Bug #610660)
- Added call to the `'*.head.content'` elements when writing out long description chunks.
- Make sure `legalnotice` link is correct even when chunking to a different `base.dir`.
- Use CSS to set viewport characteristics if `css.decoration` is non-zero, use `div` instead of `p` for making graphic a block element; make figure titles the default alt text for images in a `figure`.
- Added space-after to `list.block.spacing`.
- Reworked `section.level` template to give 'correct' answer instead of being off by one.
- When processing tables, use the `tabstyle` attribute as the division class.
- Fixed bug in `html2xhtml.xsl` that was causing the XHTML chunker to output HTML instead of XHTML.

37 Older releases

To view the release notes for older releases, see <http://cvs.sourceforge.net/viewcvs.py/docbook/xsl/RELEASE--NOTES.xml>. Be aware that there were no release notes for releases prior to the 1.50.0 release.

38 About dot-zero releases

DocBook Project "dot zero" releases should be considered *experimental* and are always followed by stable "dot one plus" releases, usually within two or three weeks. Please help to ensure the stability of "dot one plus" releases by carefully testing each "dot zero" release and reporting back about any problems you find.

It is not recommended that you use a "dot zero" release in a production system. Instead, you should wait for the "dot one" or greater versions.